

John L. Viescas
Popular Access author and Microsoft MVP

Jeff Conrad
Software design engineer for Access and Microsoft MVP

Microsoft

Microsoft® Office

Access™ 2007

INSIDE OUT

CD INCLUDES:

- Sample database applications
- References for the new interface
- eBook, bonus chapters, and more!

- The ultimate, in-depth reference
- Hundreds of timesaving solutions
- Supremely organized book and CD

PUBLISHED BY
Microsoft Press
A Division of Microsoft Corporation
One Microsoft Way
Redmond, Washington 98052-6399

Copyright © 2007 by John L. Viescas and Jeff Conrad

All rights reserved. No part of the contents of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without the written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2006940676

ISBN: 978-0-7356-2325-5

Printed and bound in the United States of America.

6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 QGT 7 6 5 4 3 2

Distributed in Canada by H.B. Fenn and Company Ltd.

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Microsoft Press books are available through booksellers and distributors worldwide. For further information about international editions, contact your local Microsoft Corporation office or contact Microsoft Press International directly at fax (425) 936-7329. Visit our Web site at www.microsoft.com/mspress. Send comments to mspinput@microsoft.com.

Microsoft, Microsoft Press, ActiveX, Calibri, Excel, Expression, FrontPage, Georgia, Hotmail, InfoPath, IntelliSense, Internet Explorer, MSDN, MS-DOS, MSN, OneNote, Outlook, PivotChart, PivotTable, PowerPoint, Rushmore, SharePoint, SQL Server,Tahoma, Verdana, Visual Basic, Visual C#, Visual C++, Visual FoxPro, Visual J#, Visual Studio, Windows, Windows Live, Windows NT, Windows Server, and Windows Vista. are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Other product and company names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

The example companies, organizations, products, domain names, e-mail addresses, logos, people, places, and events depicted herein are fictitious. No association with any real company, organization, product, domain name, e-mail address, logo, person, place, or event is intended or should be inferred.

This book expresses the author's views and opinions. The information contained in this book is provided without any express, statutory, or implied warranties. Neither the authors, Microsoft Corporation, nor its resellers, or distributors will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused either directly or indirectly by this book.

Acquisitions Editor: Juliana Aldous Atkinson
Developmental Editor: Sandra Haynes
Project Editor: Melissa von Tschudi-Sutton
Project Management: Publishing.com
Compositor: Curtis Philips

Technical Reviewer: Rozanne Murphy Whalen
Copy Editors: Andrea Fox and Kim Wimpsett
Proofreader: Andrea Fox
Indexer: Rebecca Plunkett

Dedication

For Suzanne, as always . . .

— John Viescas

*For the love of my life, Cheryl. Without your love, support, and patience,
I would not have been able to complete this project.*

Thank you for always believing in me.

*And for Amy, Aaron, and Arica. Thank you
for understanding why Daddy could not play
very much for a long time.*

*And thank you John for taking a chance
and giving an untested, slightly crazy, Access Junkie
the opportunity of a lifetime.*

— Jeff Conrad



Contents at a Glance

Part 1: Understanding Microsoft Access

Chapter 1	
What Is Microsoft Access?	3
Chapter 2	
Exploring the New Look of Access 2007	19
Chapter 3	
Microsoft Office Access 2007 Overview	99

Part 2: Building an Access 2007 Desktop Application

Chapter 4	
Creating Your Database and Tables	141
Chapter 5	
Modifying Your Table Design	203
Chapter 6	
Importing and Linking Data.	253
Chapter 7	
Creating and Working with Simple Queries	347
Chapter 8	
Building Complex Queries	413
Chapter 9	
Modifying Data with Action Queries	485

Part 3: Creating Forms and Reports in a Desktop Application

Chapter 10	
Using Forms	517
Chapter 11	
Building a Form	559

Chapter 12	
Customizing a Form.	609
Chapter 13	
Advanced Form Design.	685
Chapter 14	
Using Reports	735
Chapter 15	
Constructing a Report.	757
Chapter 16	
Advanced Report Design	811

Part 4: Automating an Access Application

Chapter 17	
Understanding Event Processing	867
Chapter 18	
Automating Your Application with Macros	887
Chapter 19	
Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals	941
Chapter 20	
Automating Your Application with Visual Basic	1051

Part 5: Linking Access and the Web

Chapter 21	
Publishing Data on the Web	1127
Chapter 22	
Working with Windows SharePoint Services	1165
Chapter 23	
Using XML	1235

Part 6: After Completing Your Application

Chapter 24
The Finishing Touches.1283

Chapter 25
Distributing Your Application1319

Appendix
Installing Your Software.1341



Part 7: Designing an Access Project

Chapter 26
Building Tables in an Access Project1449

Chapter 27
Building Queries in an Access Project1493

Chapter 28
Designing Forms in an Access Project1549

Chapter 29
Building Reports in an Access Project1569

Part 8: Articles

Article 1
Designing Your Database Application.A3

Article 2
Understanding SQL.A33

Article 3
Exporting Data.A79

Article 4
Function Reference.A85

Article 5
Color Names and Codes.A93

Article 6
Macro ActionsA101

Table of Contents

Acknowledgments .....	.xxv
About the CD .....	.xxvii
What's on the CD .....	.xxvii
Sample Applications .....	.xxviii
System Requirements .....	.xxix
Errata & Book Support .....	.xxix
Conventions and Features Used in This Book .....	.xxxi
Text Conventions .....	.xxxi
Design Conventions .....	.xxxi
Syntax Conventions .....	.xxxiii
Introduction .....	.xxxv
Getting Familiar with Access 2007 .....	.xxxv
About This Book .....	.xxxvi

Part 1: Understanding Microsoft Access1

Chapter 1: What Is Microsoft Access?	3
What Is a Database?	4
Relational Databases	4
Database Capabilities	5
Access as an RDBMS	6
Data Definition and Storage	6
Data Manipulation	9
Data Control	12
Access as an Application Development System	13
Deciding to Move to Database Software	15

 **What do you think of this book? We want to hear from you!**

Microsoft is interested in hearing your feedback so we can continually improve our books and learning resources for you. To participate in a brief online survey, please visit:

www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey/

Chapter 2:	Exploring the New Look of Access 2007	19
	Opening Access for the First Time	19
	Getting Started—A New Look for Access	21
	Opening an Existing Database	22
	Exploring the Microsoft Office Button	25
	Taking Advantage of the Quick Access Toolbar	27
	Understanding Content Security	34
	Temporarily Enabling a Database That Is Not Trusted	35
	Understanding the Trust Center	36
	Enabling Content by Defining Trusted Locations	39
	Understanding the New Ribbon Feature	41
	Home Tab	42
	Create Tab	42
	External Data Tab	43
	Database Tools Tab	44
	Understanding the New Navigation Pane	45
	Exploring Navigation Pane Object Views	48
	Working with Custom Categories and Groups	53
	Sorting and Selecting Views in the Navigation Pane	76
	Manually Sorting Objects in the Navigation Pane	77
	Searching for Database Objects	78
	Using the Single-Document vs. Multiple-Document Interface	83
	Modifying Global Settings via the Access Options Dialog Box	87
Chapter 3:	Microsoft Office Access 2007 Overview	99
	The Architecture of Access	99
	Exploring a Desktop Database—Housing Reservations	102
	Tables	105
	Queries	110
	Forms	114
	Reports	120
	Macros	128
	Modules	130
	Exploring a Project File—Conrad Systems Contacts	132
	Tables	133
	Views, Functions, and Stored Procedures	135
	The Many Faces of Access	137
	Part 2: Building an Access 2007 Desktop Application	139
Chapter 4:	Creating Your Database and Tables	141
	Creating a New Database	142
	Using a Database Template to Create a Database	142
	Creating a New Empty Database	147
	Creating Your First Simple Table by Entering Data	149
	Creating a Table Using a Table Template	151

Creating a Table in Design View	155
Defining Fields	156
Understanding Field Data Types	157
Setting Field Properties	161
Completing the Fields in the Companies Table	166
Defining Simple Field Validation Rules	168
Defining Input Masks	170
Defining a Primary Key	174
Defining a Table Validation Rule	175
Understanding Other Table Properties	178
Defining Relationships	181
Defining Your First Relationship	183
Creating a Relationship on Multiple Fields	186
Adding Indexes	188
Single-Field Indexes	188
Multiple-Field Indexes	190
Setting Table Design Options	191
Creating a Default Template for New Databases	195
Printing a Table Definition	199
Database Limitations	201
 Chapter 5: Modifying Your Table Design	203
Before You Get Started	204
Making a Backup Copy	205
Checking Object Dependencies	207
Deleting Tables	209
Renaming Tables	211
Changing Field Names	212
Moving Fields	217
Inserting Fields	220
Copying Fields	222
Deleting Fields	225
Changing Data Attributes	225
Changing Data Types	226
Changing Data Lengths	230
Dealing with Conversion Errors	231
Changing Other Field Properties	232
Reversing Changes	234
Using the Table Analyzer Wizard	234
Taking a Look at Lookup Properties	240
Working with Multi-Value Lookup Fields	245
Changing the Primary Key	248
Compacting Your Database	250

Chapter 6:	Importing and Linking Data	253
	A Word About Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)	253
	Creating a Data Source to Link to an ODBC Database	255
	Importing vs. Linking Database Files	259
	Importing Data and Databases	260
	Importing dBASE Files	260
	Importing Paradox Files	265
	Importing SQL Tables	266
	Importing Access Objects	271
	Importing Spreadsheet Data	273
	Preparing a Spreadsheet	274
	Importing a Spreadsheet	275
	Fixing Errors	280
	Importing Text Files	282
	Preparing a Text File	282
	Importing a Text File	285
	Fixing Errors	290
	Modifying Imported Tables	292
	Linking Files	292
	Security Considerations	293
	Performance Considerations	293
	Linking Access Tables	295
	Linking dBASE and Paradox Files	298
	Linking Text and Spreadsheet Files	300
	Linking SQL Tables	301
	Modifying Linked Tables	302
	Unlinking Linked Tables	303
	Using the Linked Table Manager	303
	Collecting Data via E-Mail	304
	Collecting Data via HTML Forms	305
	Collecting Data Using InfoPath Forms	327
Chapter 7:	Creating and Working with Simple Queries	347
	Selecting Data from a Single Table	349
	Specifying Fields	351
	Setting Field Properties	353
	Entering Selection Criteria	355
	Using Expressions	362
	Using the Expression Builder	371
	Specifying Field Names	377
	Sorting Data	378
	Testing Validation Rule Changes	381
	Checking a New Field Validation Rule	381
	Checking a New Table Validation Rule	382
	Working in Query Datasheet View	384
	Moving Around and Using Keyboard Shortcuts	384
	Working with Subdatasheets	387

	Changing Data	390
	Working with Hyperlinks	397
	Sorting and Searching for Data	401
Chapter 8:	Building Complex Queries	413
	Selecting Data from Multiple Tables	414
	Creating Inner Joins	414
	Building a Query on a Query	421
	Using Outer Joins	425
	Using a Query Wizard	431
	Summarizing Information with Totals Queries	435
	Totals Within Groups	435
	Selecting Records to Form Groups	440
	Selecting Specific Groups	441
	Building Crosstab Queries	442
	Using Query Parameters	449
	Customizing Query Properties	452
	Controlling Query Output	452
	Working with Unique Records and Values	454
	Defining a Subdatasheet	458
	Other Query Properties	462
	Editing and Creating Queries in SQL View	463
	Limitations on Using Select Queries to Update Data	468
	Creating PivotTables and PivotCharts from Queries	469
	Building a Query for a PivotTable	470
	Designing a PivotTable	473
	Designing a PivotChart	478
Chapter 9:	Modifying Data with Action Queries	485
	Updating Groups of Rows	486
	Testing with a Select Query	486
	Converting a Select Query to an Update Query	488
	Running an Update Query	489
	Updating Multiple Fields	491
	Creating an Update Query Using Multiple Tables or Queries	493
	Creating a New Table with a Make-Table Query	495
	Creating a Make-Table Query	496
	Running a Make-Table Query	500
	Inserting Data from Another Table	502
	Creating an Append Query	503
	Running an Append Query	506
	Deleting Groups of Rows	507
	Testing with a Select Query	507
	Using a Delete Query	510
	Deleting Inactive Data	510
	Troubleshooting Action Queries	512
	Solving Common Action Query Errors and Problems	512
	Looking at an Error Example	513

Part 3: Creating Forms and Reports in a Desktop Application . . . 515

Chapter 10:	Using Forms	517
	Uses of Forms	517
	A Tour of Forms	518
	Headers, Detail Sections, and Footers	518
	Multiple-Page Forms	520
	Continuous Forms	520
	Split Forms	522
	Subforms	522
	Pop-Up Forms	523
	Modal Forms	524
	Special Controls	526
	PivotTables and PivotCharts	536
	Moving Around on Forms and Working with Data	539
	Viewing Data	539
	Adding Records and Changing Data	543
	Adding a New Record	543
	Changing and Deleting Data	550
	Searching for and Sorting Data	551
	Performing a Simple Search	552
	Using the Search Box	553
	Performing a Quick Sort on a Form Field	554
	Adding a Filter to a Form	554
	Printing Forms	557
Chapter 11:	Building a Form	559
	Forms and Object-Oriented Programming	559
	Starting from Scratch—A Simple Input Form	563
	Building a New Form with Design Tools	563
	Building a Simple Input Form for the tblCompanies Table	578
	Customizing Colors and Checking Your Design Results	587
	Working with Quick Create Commands and the Form Wizard	590
	Creating a Form with the Quick Create Commands	590
	Creating the Basic Products Form with the Form Wizard	593
	Modifying the Products Form	598
	Simplifying Data Input with a Form	601
	Taking Advantage of Combo Boxes and List Boxes	601
	Using Toggle Buttons, Check Boxes, and Option Buttons	605
Chapter 12:	Customizing a Form	609
	Aligning and Sizing Controls in Design View	609
	Sizing Controls to Fit Content	612
	Adjusting the Layout of Controls	616
	“Snapping” Controls to the Grid	617
	Lining Up Controls	619

Working in Layout View	623
Understanding Control Layouts and Control Anchoring	623
Lining Up Controls	625
Moving Controls Within a Control Layout	626
Formatting a Column of Controls	630
Resizing Controls	631
Removing a Control Layout	632
Placing Controls into a Control Layout	635
Adding Some Space with Control Padding	638
Completing the Form	640
Enhancing the Look of a Form	642
Lines and Rectangles	642
Colors and Special Effects	645
Fonts	648
Setting Control Properties	651
Formatting Properties	651
Adding a Scroll Bar	661
Enabling and Locking Controls	662
Setting the Tab Order	662
Adding a Smart Tag	663
Understanding Other Control Properties	666
Setting Form Properties	670
Allowing Different Views	670
Setting Navigation Options	671
Defining a Pop-Up and/or Modal Form	672
Controlling Edits, Deletions, Additions, and Filtering	673
Defining Window Controls	675
Setting the Border Style	675
Understanding Other Form Properties	676
Setting Form and Control Defaults	680
Changing Control Defaults	680
Working with AutoFormat	681
Defining a Template Form	682
Chapter 13: Advanced Form Design	685
Basing a Form on a Multiple-Table Query	686
Creating a Many-to-One Form	686
Creating and Embedding Subforms	692
Specifying the Subform Source	693
Designing the Innermost Subform	696
Designing the First Level Subform	701
Embedding a Subform	703
Specifying the Main Form Source	706
Creating the Main Form	707
Creating a Subdatasheet Subform	710
Displaying Values in an Option Group	714
Using Conditional Formatting	716

	Working with the Tab Control	719
	Creating Multiple-Page Forms	723
	Introducing ActiveX Controls—The Calendar Control	726
	Working with PivotChart Forms	730
	Building a PivotChart Form	731
	Embedding a Linked PivotChart	733
Chapter 14:	Using Reports	735
	Uses of Reports	735
	A Tour of Reports	736
	Print Preview—A First Look	737
	Headers, Detail Sections, Footers, and Groups	739
	Subreports	741
	Objects in Reports	744
	Report View—A First Look	745
	Printing Reports	750
	Print Setup	750
Chapter 15:	Constructing a Report	757
	Starting from Scratch—A Simple Report	757
	Building the Report Query	758
	Designing the Report	759
	Grouping, Sorting, and Totaling Information	761
	Completing the Report	769
	Using the Report Command	775
	Using the Report Wizard	777
	Specifying Report Wizard Options	778
	Viewing the Result	783
	Modifying a Wizard-Created Report in Layout View	784
	Building a Report in Layout View	790
	Starting with a Blank Report	790
	Adding Grouping and Sorting	792
	Working with Control Layouts	797
	Adding Totals to Records	804
	Applying an AutoFormat	807
Chapter 16:	Advanced Report Design	811
	Building a Query for a Complex Report	812
	Creating the Basic Facility Occupancy By Date Report	813
	Defining the Grouping and Sorting Criteria	816
	Setting Section and Report Properties	819
	Section Properties	819
	Report Properties	822
	Using Calculated Values	830
	Adding the Print Date and Page Numbers	830
	Performing Calculations	833
	Hiding Redundant Values and Concatenating Text Strings	840

Calculating Percentages.....	843
Using Running Sum.....	845
Taking Advantage of Conditional Formatting.....	848
Creating and Embedding a Subreport.....	851
Understanding Subreport Challenges.....	851
Building a Report with a Subreport.....	855
Adding a PivotChart to a Report.....	860
Designing the PivotChart Form.....	860
Embedding a PivotChart in a Report.....	861

Part 4: Automating an Access Application 865

Chapter 17: Understanding Event Processing..... 867

Access as a Windows Event-Driven Application.....	867
Understanding Events in Windows.....	867
Leveraging Access Events to Build an Application.....	868
Summary of Form and Report Events.....	869
Understanding Event Sequence and Form Editing.....	882

Chapter 18: Automating Your Application with Macros 887

Uses of Macros.....	888
The Macro Design Facility—An Overview.....	890
Working with the Macro Design Window.....	890
Saving Your Macro.....	893
Testing Your Macro.....	894
Defining Multiple Actions.....	895
Grouping Macros.....	897
Understanding Conditional Expressions.....	900
Using Embedded Macros.....	901
Editing an Embedded Macro.....	902
Creating an Embedded Macro.....	904
Deleting an Embedded Macro.....	906
Using Temporary Variables.....	907
Trapping Errors in Macros.....	910
Understanding Macro Actions That Are Not Trusted.....	916
Making Your Application Come Alive with Macros.....	918
Referencing Form and Report Objects.....	919
Opening a Secondary Form.....	921
Synchronizing Two Related Forms.....	924
Validating Data and Presetting Values.....	928
Converting Your Macros to Visual Basic.....	938

Chapter 19: Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals 941

The Visual Basic Development Environment.....	942
Modules.....	942
The Visual Basic Editor Window.....	945
Working with Visual Basic Debugging Tools.....	951

Variables and Constants	961
Data Types	961
Variable and Constant Scope	963
Declaring Constants and Variables	965
Const Statement	965
Dim Statement	966
Enum Statement	969
Event Statement	971
Private Statement	972
Public Statement	973
ReDim Statement	974
Static Statement	975
Type Statement	977
Collections, Objects, Properties, and Methods	978
The Access Application Architecture	978
The Data Access Objects (DAO) Architecture	981
The ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) Architecture	985
Referencing Collections, Objects, and Properties	987
Assigning an Object Variable—Set Statement	991
Object Methods	993
Functions and Subroutines	1005
Function Statement	1006
Sub Statement	1007
Understanding Class Modules	1009
Property Get	1010
Property Let	1012
Property Set	1014
Controlling the Flow of Statements	1016
Call Statement	1017
Do...Loop Statement	1017
For...Next Statement	1018
For Each...Next Statement	1019
GoTo Statement	1020
If...Then...Else Statement	1021
RaiseEvent Statement	1022
Select Case Statement	1023
Stop Statement	1024
While...Wend Statement	1025
With...End Statement	1025
Running Macro Actions and Menu Commands	1026
DoCmd Object	1026
Executing an Access Command	1027
Actions with Visual Basic Equivalents	1028
Trapping Errors	1028
On Error Statement	1029
Some Complex Visual Basic Examples	1030
A Procedure to Randomly Load Data	1030
A Procedure to Examine All Error Codes	1044

Chapter 20:	Automating Your Application with Visual Basic	1051
	Why Aren't We Using Macros?	1051
	When to Use Macros	1052
	When to Use Visual Basic	1052
	Assisting Data Entry	1053
	Filling In Related Data	1053
	Handling the NotInList Event	1058
	Fixing an E-Mail Hyperlink	1061
	Providing a Graphical Calendar	1063
	Working with Linked Photos	1069
	Validating Complex Data	1071
	Checking for Possible Duplicate Names	1071
	Testing for Related Records When Deleting a Record	1074
	Verifying a Prerequisite	1075
	Maintaining a Special Unique Value	1077
	Checking for Overlapping Data	1078
	Controlling Tabbing on a Multiple-Page Form	1080
	Automating Data Selection	1082
	Working with a Multiple-Selection List Box	1082
	Providing a Custom Query By Form	1086
	Selecting from a Summary List	1094
	Filtering One List with Another	1095
	Linking to Related Data in Another Form or Report	1098
	Linking Forms Using a Filter	1098
	Linking to a Report Using a Filter	1099
	Synchronizing Two Forms Using a Class Event	1101
	Automating Complex Tasks	1105
	Triggering a Data Task from a Related Form	1105
	Linking to a Related Task	1109
	Calculating a Stored Value	1114
	Automating Reports	1114
	Allowing for Used Mailing Labels	1115
	Drawing on a Report	1118
	Dynamically Filtering a Report When It Opens	1121
	Part 5: Linking Access and the Web	1125
Chapter 21:	Publishing Data on the Web	1127
	Working with the Web	1127
	Understanding HTML	1128
	Introducing XML	1135
	Understanding Static Web Pages	1137
	Viewing Static HTML Pages	1139
	Creating a Static HTML Document	1140
	Improving the Look of Exported Data in HTML	1143
	Generating an HTML Page from an Access Report	1151
	Writing HTML from Visual Basic	1154

Creating Dynamic Web Pages	1158
Delivering Dynamic Query Results	1158
Processing Live Data with HTML Forms	1160
Using Visual Studio .NET and ASP.NET	1160
Sharing Your Data with SharePoint	1161
Introducing Windows SharePoint Services	1161
Office and Windows SharePoint Services	1162
Chapter 22: Working with Windows SharePoint Services	1165
Working Within the Windows SharePoint Services User Interface	1167
Editing Data in Lists	1168
Creating New Views	1172
Adding Columns to Lists	1175
Recycle Bin	1179
Using Windows SharePoint Services from Access	1182
Exporting Data to Windows SharePoint Services	1182
Importing a List from Windows SharePoint Services	1186
Linking a Windows SharePoint Services List into Access	1191
Using SharePoint List Options with Linked Lists	1196
Creating a New Windows SharePoint Services List from Within Access	1198
Migrating an Access Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site	1207
Publishing Your Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site	1208
Moving Your Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site	1212
Republish a Database to a Windows SharePoint Services Site	1219
Opening the Database from Windows SharePoint Services	1223
Working Offline	1226
Synchronizing Changes After Working Offline	1230
Chapter 23: Using XML	1235
Exploring XML	1236
Well-Formed XML	1236
Understanding XML File Types	1237
Using XML in Microsoft Access	1245
Exporting and Importing XML from the User Interface	1245
Importing and Exporting XML in Visual Basic	1256
Modifying Table Templates	1260
Adding a New Field to a Table Template	1261
Modifying a Field in a Table Template	1264
Customizing the Ribbon with XML	1266
Creating a USysRibbons Table	1266
Creating a Test Form	1270
Building the Ribbon XML	1270

Part 6: After Completing Your Application 1281

Chapter 24: The Finishing Touches 1283

Creating Custom Ribbons	1283
Loading Ribbon XML	1284
Using Ribbon Attributes	1287
Creating VBA Callbacks	1296
Dynamically Updating Ribbon Elements	1297
Loading Images into Custom Controls	1299
Hiding Options on the Microsoft Office Button	1300
Setting Focus to a Tab	1301
Fine-Tuning with Performance Analyzer	1302
Disabling Layout View	1304
Defining Switchboard Forms	1305
Designing a Switchboard Form from Scratch	1305
Using the Switchboard Manager to Design Switchboard Forms	1306
Controlling How Your Application Starts and Runs	1310
Setting Startup Properties for Your Database	1310
Starting and Stopping Your Application	1312
Creating an AutoKeys Macro	1315
Performing a Final Visual Basic Compile	1316

Chapter 25: Distributing Your Application 1319

Using Linked Tables in a Desktop Database	1320
Taking Advantage of the Database Splitter Wizard	1320
Creating Startup Code to Verify and Correct Linked Table Connections	1323
Understanding Runtime Mode	1328
Creating an Execute-Only Database	1329
Creating an Application Shortcut	1331
Encrypting Your Database	1334
Packaging and Signing Your Database	1336
Understanding the Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime	1340



See the companion CD for bonus content Parts 7 and 8

Appendix: Installing Your Software 1341

Installing the Microsoft Office System	1342
Choosing Options When You Have No Previous Version of Microsoft Office	1342
Choosing Options to Upgrade a Previous Version of Microsoft Office	1347
Installing SQL Server 2005 Express Edition	1349
Converting from a Previous Release of Access	1358
Conversion Issues	1359

Index to Troubleshooting Topics	1361
Index	1363



Bonus Content on the Companion CD

Part 7: Designing an Access Project 1445

Chapter 26: **Building Tables in an Access Project 1447**

Creating a New Project File	1448
Building a New SQL Server Database	1448
Connecting to an Existing SQL Server Database	1452
Creating a Table in Design View	1457
Defining Columns.	1459
Column Data Types	1461
Completing the Columns in the Companies Table	1465
Understanding Column Properties	1467
Defining a Primary Key	1470
Adding Indexes	1471
Creating Additional Tables in Contact Tracking	1475
Defining Check Constraints	1477
Creating Additional Constraint Expressions	1481
Defining Relationships	1482
Defining Relationships in Table Design View	1482
Defining Relationships Using Database Diagrams	1485
Setting Table Design Options	1488

Chapter 27: **Building Queries in an Access Project 1491**

Viewing Queries in an Access Project	1492
Building Queries Using the Query Designer	1495
Understanding the Query Designer	1495
Working with Views	1507
Working with In-Line Functions	1513
Working with Stored Procedures	1519
Building Queries Using a Text Editor	1524
Building a Text Stored Procedure	1526
Building a Text Scalar Function	1541
Building a Text Table-Valued Function	1543

Chapter 28:	Designing Forms in an Access Project	1547
	Understanding Form Differences in an Access Project	1547
	Choosing Option Settings	1549
	Setting Project Form Properties	1552
	Setting Recordset Type	1554
	Understanding Max Records	1555
	Working with Server Filters	1558
	Setting Input Parameters	1561
Chapter 29:	Building Reports in an Access Project	1567
	Understanding Report Differences in an Access Project	1567
	Setting Project Report Properties	1569
	Working with Server Filters	1570
	Working with Input Parameters	1572
	Part 8: Articles	A1
Article 1:	Designing Your Database Application	A3
	Application Design Fundamentals	A3
	Step 1: Identifying Tasks	A4
	Step 2: Charting Task Flow	A4
	Step 3: Identifying Data Elements	A5
	Step 4: Organizing the Data	A5
	Step 5: Designing a Prototype and a User Interface	A5
	Step 6: Constructing the Application	A5
	Step 7: Testing, Reviewing, and Refining	A6
	An Application Design Strategy	A7
	Analyzing the Tasks	A7
	Selecting the Data	A11
	Organizing Tasks	A11
	Data Analysis	A13
	Choosing the Database Subjects	A13
	Mapping Subjects to Your Database	A16
	Database Design Concepts	A16
	Waste Is the Problem	A17
	Normalization Is the Solution	A19
	Efficient Relationships Are the Result	A27
	When to Break the Rules	A28
	Improving Performance of Critical Tasks	A29
	Capturing Point-in-Time Data	A29
	Creating Report Snapshot Data	A31

Article 2:	Understanding SQL	A33
	SQL SELECT Queries	A34
	Aggregate Functions: AVG, CHECKSUM_AGG, COUNT, MAX, MIN, STDEV, STDEVP, SUM, VAR, VARP	A35
	BETWEEN Predicate	A35
	Column-Name	A35
	Comparison Predicate	A37
	EXISTS Predicate	A38
	Expression	A39
	FROM Clause	A41
	Syntax	A41
	GROUP BY Clause	A44
	HAVING Clause	A45
	IN Clause	A46
	IN Predicate	A47
	LIKE Predicate	A48
	NULL Predicate	A50
	ORDER BY Clause	A50
	PARAMETERS Declaration	A52
	Quantified Predicate	A54
	Search-Condition	A55
	SELECT Statement	A57
	Subquery	A64
	TRANSFORM Statement	A67
	UNION Query Operator	A68
	WHERE Clause	A70
	SQL Action Queries	A71
	DELETE Statement	A72
	INSERT Statement (Append Query)	A73
	SELECT . . . INTO Statement (Make-Table Query)	A75
	UPDATE Statement	A77
Article 3:	Exporting Data	A79
	Exporting to Another Access Database	A79
	Exporting to a Spreadsheet or to a dBASE or Paradox File	A80
	Exporting to a Text File	A81
	Exporting to a Mail Merge Document in Word	A81
	Exporting to an ODBC Database	A82
Article 4:	Function Reference	A85
Article 5:	Color Names and Codes	A93

Article 6:	Macro Actions.	A101
	Opening and Closing Access Objects	A102
	Printing Data	A105
	Executing a Query	A106
	Testing Conditions and Controlling Action Flow	A107
	Setting Values	A109
	Searching for Data.	A111
	Building a Custom Menu and Executing Menu Commands	A112
	Controlling Display and Focus.	A113
	Informing the User of Actions.	A115
	Renaming, Copying, Deleting, Saving, Importing, and Exporting Objects	A115
	Using Temporary Variables	A117
	Handling Errors	A118
	Running Another Application	A118



What do you think of this book? We want to hear from you!

Microsoft is interested in hearing your feedback so we can continually improve our books and learning resources for you. To participate in a brief online survey, please visit:

www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey/

Acknowledgments

The folks on the Microsoft Office Access development team provided invaluable technical support as we worked with the beta software and tried to figure out some of the challenging technical details in Microsoft Office Access 2007. Special thanks to Clint Covington, Tim Getsch, Zac Woodall, Suraj Poozhiyil, Neil Black, Viki Selca, and Rob Cooper. You folks make an author's job so much easier. But any errors or omissions in this book are ultimately ours.

A book this large and complex requires a top-notch team to get what we put into Microsoft Office Word documents onto the printed pages you are now holding. We had some of the best in the business at both Microsoft Press and Publishing.com to get the job done. Many thanks to Sandra Haynes and Melissa von Tschudi-Sutton at Microsoft Press. Special thanks to Curt Philips, Rozanne Murphy Whalen, Andrea Fox, Kim Wimpsett, and Publishing.com. We couldn't have done it without you!

And last, but certainly not least, we thank our wives and soul mates. They not only patiently stood by us as we cranked through nearly 3,000 pages of manuscript but also helped behind the scenes reviewing and editing what we did.

John Viescas
Paris, France

Jeff Conrad
Bend, Oregon

February 2007

About the CD



The companion CD that ships with this book contains many tools and resources to help you get the most out of your Inside Out book.

CAUTION!

If you install the sample files on a Microsoft Windows Vista system, a Windows XP system, or a Windows Server 2003 or later system, you must run the installation program as an Administrator to install the files in the default location. If you do not do that, Microsoft Office Access 2007 opens all the database files as read-only. If you are unable to run the installation program as an Administrator, change the default installation location to a subfolder in My Documents.

Note

If for any reason you are unable to access the files from the CD, the files can also be downloaded from the Web at <http://www.microsoftpressstore.com/9780735623255>

What's on the CD

Your Inside Out CD includes the following:

- **Sample files** Click the Install Sample Files button on the Welcome tab to install the sample files and resources referenced in the book.
- **Additional eBooks** In this section you'll find the following resources:
 - *Microsoft Computer Dictionary*, Fifth Edition
 - *First Look 2007 Microsoft Office System* (Katherine Murray, 2006)
 - Sample chapter and poster from *Look Both Ways: Help Protect Your Family on the Internet* (Linda Criddle, 2007)
 - Windows Vista Product Guide
- **Extending Office** Here you'll find links to Microsoft and other third-party tools that will help you get the most out of your software experience.
- **Resources** In this section, you'll find links to white papers, users assistance articles, product support information, insider blogs, tools, and much more.
- **Bonus content** In the Bonus Content section, you'll find four chapters that will teach you additional skills for creating client/server applications in an Access project. You'll also find six articles that contain important reference materials.

Sample Applications

Throughout this book, you'll see examples from three sample Office Access 2007 applications included on the companion CD:

- *Wedding List (WeddingMC.accdb and WeddingList.accdb)*. This application is an example of a simple database that you might build for your personal use. It has a single main table where you can track the names and addresses of invitees, whether they've said that they will attend, the description of any gift they sent, and whether a thank you note has been sent. Although you might be tempted to store such a simple list in a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet or a Microsoft Word document, this application demonstrates how storing the information in Access makes it easy to search and sort the data and produce reports. The WeddingMC database is automated entirely using macros, and the WeddingList database is the same application automated with Microsoft Visual Basic.
- *Housing Reservations (Housing.accdb)*. This application demonstrates how a company housing department might track and manage reservations in company-owned housing facilities for out-of-town employees and guests. This application includes data access pages that could be published on a company intranet for use by employees logging in from remote locations. You'll also find *HousingDataCopy.accdb* and *HousingDataCopy2.accdb* files that contain many of the query, form, and report examples.
- *Conrad Systems Contacts (Contacts.accdb, ContactsData.accdb, Contacts.adp, and ContactsSQL.mdf)*. This application is both a contacts management and order entry database—two samples for the price of one! This sample database demonstrates how to build a client/server application using only desktop tools as well as how to “upscale” an application to create an Office Access 2007 project and related Microsoft SQL Server tables, views, stored procedures, and functions. You will need to install Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition to be able to fully use the project version of this database. You'll also find a *ContactsDataCopy.accdb* file that contains additional query, form, and report examples.

Please note that the person names, company names, e-mail addresses, and Web site addresses in these databases are fictitious. Although we preloaded both databases with sample data, the Housing Reservations and Conrad Systems Contacts databases also include a special form (zfrmLoadData) that has code to load random data into the sample tables based on parameters that you supply.

The examples in this book assume you have installed the 2007 Microsoft Office system, not just Access 2007. Several examples also assume that you have installed all optional features of Access through the 2007 Office release setup program. If you have not installed these additional features, your screen might not match the illustrations in this book or you might not be able to run the samples from the companion CD.

System Requirements

The following are the minimum system requirements necessary to run the CD:

- Microsoft Windows Vista, Windows XP with Service Pack (SP) 2, Windows Server 2003 with SP1, or newer operating system
- 500 megahertz (MHz) processor or higher
- 2 gigabytes (GB) storage space (a portion of this disk space will be freed after installation if the original download package is removed from the hard drive)
- 256 megabytes (MB) RAM
- CD-ROM or DVD-ROM drive
- 1024×768 or higher resolution monitor
- Microsoft Windows or Windows Vista-compatible sound card and speakers
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 or newer
- Microsoft Mouse or compatible pointing device

Note

An Internet connection is necessary to access the hyperlinks on the companion CD. Connect time charges may apply.

Errata & Book Support

If you find an error, please report it on our Microsoft Press site:

1. Go to www.microsoftpressstore.com.
2. In the Search box, enter the book's ISBN or title.
3. Select your book from the search results.
4. On your book's catalog page, find the Errata & Updates tab.
5. Click View/Submit Errata.

You'll find additional information and services for your book on its catalog page. If you need additional support, please e-mail Microsoft Press Book Support at mspinput@microsoft.com.

If for any reason you are unable to install the practice files from the CD, the files can also be downloaded from the Web here:

<http://www.microsoftpressstore.com/title/9780735623255>.

Please note that product support for Microsoft software is not offered through the addresses above. For software assistance, visit support.microsoft.com.

Note

This companion CD relies on scripting for some interface enhancements. If scripting is disabled or unavailable in your browser, follow these steps to run the CD:

1. From My Computer, double-click the drive that contains this companion CD.
2. Open the Webfiles folder.
3. Double-click Welcome.htm to open the CD in your default browser.

We Want to Hear from You

At Microsoft Press, your satisfaction is our top priority, and your feedback our most valuable asset. Please tell us what you think of this book at:

<http://www.microsoft.com/learning/booksurvey>

The survey is short, and we read every one of your comments and ideas. Thanks in advance for your input!

Stay in Touch

Let's keep the conversation going! We're on Twitter: <http://twitter.com/MicrosoftPress>.

Conventions and Features Used in This Book

This book uses special text and design conventions to make it easier for you to find the information you need.

Text Conventions

Convention	Meaning
Abbreviated commands for navigating the Ribbon	For your convenience, this book uses abbreviated commands. For example, “Click Home, Insert, Insert Cells” means that you should click the Home tab on the Ribbon, then click the Insert button, and finally click the Insert Cells command.
Boldface type	Boldface type is used to indicate text that you type.
Initial Capital Letters	The first letters of the names of tabs, dialog boxes, dialog box elements, and commands are capitalized. Example: the Save As dialog box.
<i>Italicized type</i>	<i>Italicized type</i> is used to indicate new terms.
Plus sign (+) in text	Keyboard shortcuts are indicated by a plus sign (+) separating two key names. For example, Alt+Shift+Tab means that you press the Alt, Shift, and Tab keys at the same time.

Design Conventions

INSIDE OUT

This Statement Illustrates an Example of an “Inside Out” Heading

These are the book’s signature tips. In these tips, you’ll get the straight scoop on what’s going on with the software—inside information about why a feature works the way it does. You’ll also find handy workarounds to deal with software problems.

Sidebars

Sidebars provide helpful hints, timesaving tricks, or alternative procedures related to the task being discussed.

TROUBLESHOOTING

This statement illustrates an example of a “Troubleshooting” problem statement.

Look for these sidebars to find solutions to common problems you might encounter. Troubleshooting sidebars appear next to related information in the chapters. You can also use “Index to Troubleshooting Topics” at the back of the book to look up problems by topic.

Cross-references point you to other locations in the book that offer additional information about the topic being discussed.

CAUTION!

Cautions identify potential problems that you should look out for when you’re completing a task or problems that you must address before you can complete a task.

Note

Notes offer additional information related to the task being discussed.



When an example has a related file that is included on the companion CD, this icon appears in the margin. You can use these files to follow along with the book’s examples.

Syntax Conventions

The following conventions are used in the syntax descriptions for Visual Basic statements in Chapter 19, “Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals,” Chapter 20, “Automating Your Application with Visual Basic,” SQL statements in Article 2, “Understanding SQL,” and any other chapter where you find syntax defined. These conventions do not apply to code examples listed within the text; all code examples appear exactly as you’ll find them in the sample databases.

You must enter all other symbols, such as parentheses and colons, exactly as they appear in the syntax line. Much of the syntax shown in the Visual Basic chapter has been broken into multiple lines. You can format your code all on one line, or you can write a single line of code on multiple lines using the Visual Basic line continuation character (`_`).

Convention	Meaning
Bold	Bold type indicates keywords and reserved words that you must enter exactly as shown. Visual Basic understands keywords entered in uppercase, lowercase, and mixed case type. Access stores SQL keywords in queries in all uppercase, but you can enter the keywords in any case.
Italic	Italicized words represent variables that you supply.
Angle brackets < >	Angle brackets enclose syntactic elements that you must supply. The words inside the angle brackets describe the element but do not show the actual syntax of the element. Do not enter the angle brackets.
Brackets []	Brackets enclose optional items. If more than one item is listed, the items are separated by a pipe character (<code>|</code>). Choose one or none of the elements. Do not enter the brackets or the pipe; they’re not part of the element. Note that Visual Basic and SQL in many cases require that you enclose names in brackets. When brackets are required as part of the syntax of variables that you must supply in these examples, the brackets are italicized, as in <i>[MyTable].[MyField]</i> .
Braces { }	Braces enclose one or more options. If more than one option is listed, the items are separated by a pipe character (<code>|</code>). Choose one item from the list. Do not enter the braces or the pipe.
Ellipsis ...	Ellipses indicate that you can repeat an item one or more times. When a comma is shown with an ellipsis (<code>,...</code>), enter a comma between items.
Underscore _	You can use a blank space followed by an underscore to continue a line of Visual Basic code to the next line for readability. You cannot place an underscore in the middle of a string literal. You do not need an underscore for continued lines in SQL, but you cannot break a literal across lines.

Introduction

Microsoft Office Access 2007 is just one part of Microsoft's overall data management product strategy. Like all good relational databases, it allows you to link related information easily—for example, customer and order data that you enter. But Office Access 2007 also complements other database products because it has several powerful connectivity features. As its name implies, Access 2007 can work directly with data from other sources, including many popular personal computer database programs (such as dBASE and Paradox), with many SQL (Structured Query Language) databases on the desktop, on servers, on minicomputers, or on mainframes, and with data stored on Internet or intranet Web servers. Access 2007 also fully supports Microsoft's ActiveX technology, so an Access application can be either a client or a server for all the other 2007 Microsoft Office system applications, including Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Outlook, FrontPage, Publisher, and OneNote.

Access provides a very sophisticated application development system for the Microsoft Windows operating system. This helps you build applications quickly, whatever the data source. In fact, you can build simple applications by defining forms and reports based on your data and linking them with a few macros or Microsoft Visual Basic statements; there's no need to write complex code in the classic programming sense. Because Access uses Visual Basic, you can use the same set of skills with other applications in the Microsoft Office system or with Visual Basic.

For small businesses (and for consultants creating applications for small businesses), the Access desktop development features are all that's required to store and manage the data used to run the business. Access coupled with Microsoft SQL Server—on the desktop or on a server—is an ideal way for many medium-size companies to build new applications for Windows quickly and inexpensively. To enhance workgroup productivity, you can use Access to create an application linked to data on a Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services server. For large corporations with a big investment in mainframe relational database applications as well as a proliferation of desktop applications that rely on personal computer databases, Access provides the tools to easily link mainframe and personal computer data in a single Windows-based application. Access 2007 includes features to allow you to export or import data in XML format (the lingua franca of data stored on the Web).

Getting Familiar with Access 2007

If you have never used a database program—including Access—you'll find Access 2007 very approachable. Using the results of extensive productivity lab tests, Microsoft has completely revamped the user interface in all the Microsoft Office programs. The new Ribbon technology makes it much easier for novice users to get acquainted with Access and easily discover its most useful features. To get a new user jump-started, Microsoft has provided nearly a dozen local database templates that load onto your hard disk when you install Access. In addition, you'll find many additional database templates available for easy download from the Microsoft Office Web site directly from within

Access. Microsoft plans to continue to add templates after Access 2007 is released to further enhance your productivity.

Note

The Microsoft Office Fluent user interface is the term used to describe the new UI for the 2007 Microsoft Office system. The Ribbon is a component of the Microsoft Office Fluent user interface and the term used throughout this book to refer to the Ribbon component.

But if you have used any prior version of Access, you're in for a big surprise. Menus and toolbars are gone—all replaced by the new Ribbon. The Database window has been replaced by the Navigation Pane. When you first start using Access 2007, you'll probably notice a decrease in productivity—we certainly did—but it won't take you long to get comfortable with the new interface. You'll probably soon discover features that you didn't know were there. Nearly all the old familiar objects are around—tables, queries, forms, reports, macros, and modules, and you'll find that the standard design and data views you've come to know and love are still around. You'll also quickly learn that the new Layout and Report views rapidly increase your productivity.

About This Book

If you're developing a database application with the tools in Access 2007, this book gives you a thorough understanding of “programming without pain.” It provides a solid foundation for designing databases, forms, and reports and getting them all to work together. You'll learn that you can quickly create complex applications by linking design elements with macros or Visual Basic. This book will also show you how to take advantage of some of the more advanced features of Access 2007. You'll learn how to build an Access project that links directly to an SQL Server database. You'll also learn how to use Access tools to link to your Access data from the Web or link your Access application to data stored on the Web.

If you're new to developing applications, particularly database applications, this probably should not be the first book you read about Access. We recommend that you first take a look at *Microsoft Access 2007 Plain and Simple* or *Microsoft Access 2007 Step by Step*.

Microsoft Office Access 2007 Inside Out is divided into seven major parts:

- Part 1 provides an overview of Access 2007 and provides you with a detailed look at the new user interface.
 - Chapter 1 explains the major features that a database should provide, explores those features in Access, and discusses some of the main reasons why you should consider using database software.

- Chapter 2 thoroughly explores the new user interface introduced in the 2007 Office release. The chapter also explains content security, working with the Ribbon and the Navigation Pane, and setting options that customize how you work with Access 2007.
- Chapter 3 describes the architecture of Access 2007, gives you an overview of the major objects in an Access database by taking you on a tour through two of the sample databases, and explains the many ways you can use Access to create an application.
- Part 2 shows you how to create your desktop application database and tables and build queries to analyze and update data in your tables.
 - Chapter 4 teaches you how to create databases and tables.
 - Chapter 5 shows you the ins and outs of modifying tables even after you've already begun to load data and build other parts of your application.
 - Chapter 6 explains how to link to or import data from other sources.
 - Chapter 7 shows you how to build simple queries and how to work with data in Datasheet view.
 - Chapter 8 discusses how to design queries to work with data from multiple tables, summarize information, build queries that require you to work in SQL view, and work with the PivotTable and PivotChart views of queries.
 - Chapter 9 focuses on modifying sets of data with queries—updating data, inserting new data, deleting sets of data, or creating a new table from a selection of data from existing tables.
- Part 3 discusses how to build and work with forms and reports in a desktop application.
 - Chapter 10 introduces you to forms—what they look like and how they work.
 - Chapters 11, 12, and 13 teach you all about form design in a desktop application, from simple forms you build with a wizard to complex, advanced forms that use embedded forms or ActiveX controls.
 - Chapter 14 leads you on a guided tour of reports and explains their major features.
 - Chapters 15 and 16 teach you how to design, build, and implement both simple and complex reports in your desktop application.
- Part 4 shows you how to use the programming facilities in Visual Basic to integrate your database objects and make your application “come alive.”
 - Chapter 17 discusses the concept of event processing in Access, provides a comprehensive list of events, and explains the sequence in which critical events occur.
 - Chapter 18 covers macro design in depth and explains how to use the new error trapping and embedded macro features.

- Chapter 19 is a comprehensive reference to the Visual Basic language and object models implemented in Access. The final section of the chapter presents two complex coding examples with a line-by-line discussion of the code.
- Chapter 20 thoroughly discusses some of the most common tasks that you might want to automate with Visual Basic. Each section describes a problem, shows you specific form or report design techniques you must use to solve the problem, and walks you through the code from one or more of the sample databases that implements the solution.
- Part 5 is all about using Access tools with the Web.
 - Chapter 21 provides an overview of the ways you can publish data on a Web site.
 - Chapter 22 discusses specific ways to publish your Access applications using Windows SharePoint Services (version 3).
 - Chapter 23 covers the features in Access that handle XML, including importing, updating, and publishing data. The chapter also shows you how to use XML to modify table templates and design custom Ribbons.
- Part 6 covers tasks you might want to perform after completing your application.
 - Chapter 24 teaches you how to automate custom Ribbons, how to use the Performance Analyzer tool, how to design a switchboard, and how to set Startup properties.
 - Chapter 25 teaches you tasks for setting up your application so that you can distribute it to others.



- Part 7 expands on what you learned in Parts 2 and 3 by teaching you the additional skills you need to create client/server applications in an Access project.
 - Chapter 26 shows you how to build a new project file and explains how to define SQL Server tables from the project.
 - Chapter 27 teaches you how to design the project equivalent of desktop queries—views, stored procedures, and functions.
 - Chapter 28 builds on what you learned in Chapters 11–13 and shows you how forms work differently in an Access project.
 - Chapter 29 leverages what you learned in Chapters 15–16 and teaches you how to design reports in an Access project.
- The Appendix explains how to install the 2007 Office release, including which options you should choose for Access 2007 to be able to open all the samples in this book. It also discusses how to install Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition.



The CD also provides six Articles that contain important reference information:

- Article 1 explains a simple technique that you can use to design a good relational database application with little effort. Even if you're already familiar with Access or creating database applications in general, getting the table design right is so important that this article is a "must read" for everyone.
- Article 2 is a complete reference to SQL as implemented in desktop databases. It also contains notes about differences between SQL supported natively by Access and SQL implemented in SQL Server.
- Article 3 discusses how to export data and Access objects to various types of other data formats from your Access application.
- Article 4 lists the functions most commonly used in an Access application categorized by function type.
- Article 5 lists the color names and codes you can use in Access.
- Article 6 lists the macro actions you can use in Access.

Microsoft Office Access 2007 Overview

The Architecture of Access.....	99	Exploring a Project File—Conrad Systems	
Exploring a Desktop Database—Housing		Contacts.....	132
Reservations.....	102	The Many Faces of Access	137

Now that you are more comfortable with the user interface in Microsoft Office Access 2007, it's time to dig deeper into exactly what makes up an Access database. This chapter helps you understand the relationships among the main components in Access and shows you how to move around within the database management system.

The Architecture of Access

Access calls anything that can have a name an *object*. Within an Access database, the main objects are tables, queries, forms, reports, macros, and modules.

If you have worked with other database systems on desktop computers, you might have seen the term *database* used to refer to only those files in which you store data. In Access, however, a desktop database (.accdb) also includes all the major objects related to the stored data, including objects you define to automate the use of your data. You can also create an Access application using a project file (.adp) that contains the objects that define your application linked to a Microsoft SQL Server database that stores the tables and queries. Here is a summary of the major objects in an Access database:

- **Table.** An object you define and use to store data. Each table contains information about a particular subject, such as customers or orders. Tables contain *fields* (or *columns*) that store different kinds of data, such as a name or an address, and *records* (or *rows*) that collect all the information about a particular instance of the subject, such as all the information about a department named Housing Administration. You can define a *primary key* (one or more fields that have a unique value for each record) and one or more *indexes* on each table to help retrieve your data more quickly.
- **Query.** An object that provides a custom view of data from one or more tables. In Access, you can use the graphical query by example (QBE) facility or you can write SQL statements to create your queries. You can define queries to select, update, insert, or delete data. You can also define queries that create new tables from data in one or more existing tables. When your Access application is a project file connected to an SQL Server database, you can create special types of queries—functions and stored procedures—that can perform complex actions directly on the server.

- **Form.** An object designed primarily for data input or display or for control of application execution. You use forms to customize the presentation of data that your application extracts from queries or tables. You can also print forms. You can design a form to run a macro or a Microsoft Visual Basic procedure in response to any of a number of events—for example, to run a procedure when the value of data changes.
- **Report.** An object designed for formatting, calculating, printing, and summarizing selected data. You can view a report on your screen before you print it.
- **Macro.** An object that is a structured definition of one or more actions that you want Access to perform in response to a defined event. For example, you might design a macro that opens a second form in response to the selection of an item on a main form. You can include simple conditions in macros to specify when one or more actions in the macro should be performed or skipped. You can use macros to open and execute queries, to open tables, or to print or view reports. You can also run other macros or Visual Basic procedures from within a macro.
- **Module.** An object containing custom procedures that you code using Visual Basic. Modules provide a more discrete flow of actions and allow you to trap errors. Modules can be stand-alone objects containing functions that can be called from anywhere in your application, or they can be directly associated with a form or a report to respond to events on the associated form or report.

For a list of events on forms and reports, see Chapter 17, “Understanding Event Processing.”

INSIDE OUT

What Happened to Data Access Pages?

Office Access 2007 no longer supports designing *data access pages* (DAPs). Usability studies conducted by Microsoft show that DAPs are not a widely used feature within Access, and Microsoft is focusing more of their efforts on Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services for sharing data in corporate environments. To maintain backward compatibility with previous versions, Office Access 2007 will continue to support existing .mdb applications that contain DAPs, but you cannot create new data access pages or modify existing pages from within Access 2007.

Figure 3-1 shows a conceptual overview of how objects in Access are related. Tables store the data that you can extract with queries and display in reports or that you can display and update in forms. Notice that forms and reports can use data either directly from tables or from a filtered view of the data created by using queries. Queries can use Visual Basic functions to provide customized calculations on data in your database. Access also has many built-in functions that allow you to summarize and format your data in queries.

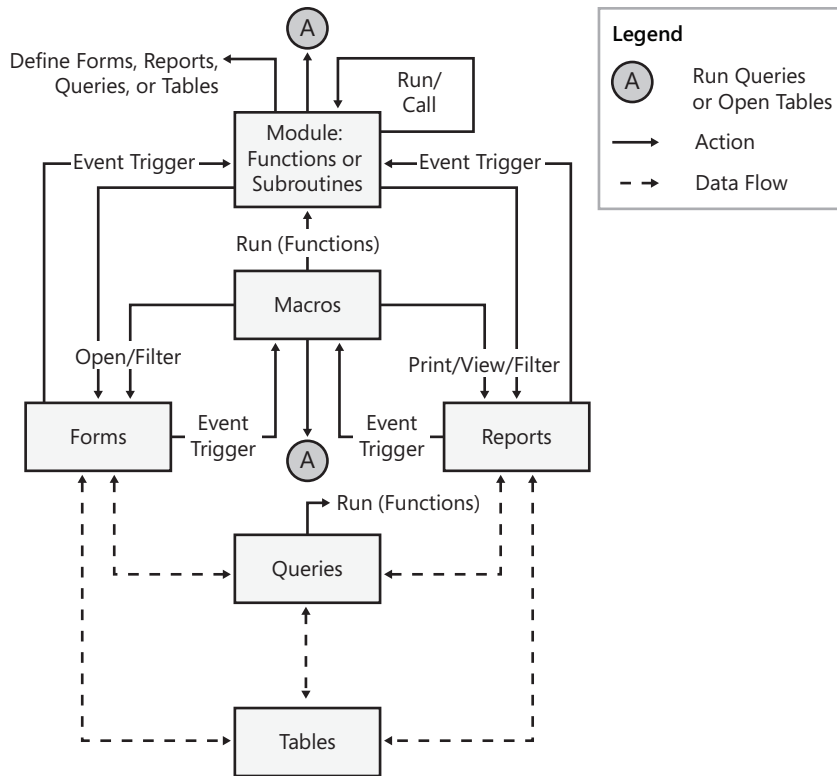


Figure 3-1. In an Access application, you can design queries to extract data from or update data in tables; you can build forms or reports on tables or queries, and you can write code in macros or modules to automate your application.

Events on forms and reports can trigger either macros or Visual Basic procedures. An event is any change in the state of an Access object. For example, you can write macros or Visual Basic procedures to respond to opening a form, closing a form, entering a new row on a form, or changing data either in the current record or in an individual control (an object on a form or report that contains data). You can even design a macro or a Visual Basic procedure that responds to the user pressing individual keys on the keyboard when entering data!

For more information about using Visual Basic within Access, see Chapter 19, “Understanding Visual Basic Fundamentals,” and Chapter 20, “Automating Your Application with Visual Basic.”

Using macros and modules, you can change the flow of your application; open, filter, and change data in forms and reports; run queries; and build new tables. Using Visual Basic, you can create, modify, and delete any Access object; manipulate data in your database row by row or column by column; and handle exceptional conditions. Using module code you can even call Windows application programming interface (API) routines to extend your application beyond the built-in capabilities of Access.

Exploring a Desktop Database—Housing Reservations



Now that you know something about the major objects that make up an Access database, a good next step is to spend some time exploring the Housing Reservations database (Housing.accdb) that comes with this book. First, follow the instructions at the beginning of this book for installing the sample files on your hard drive. When you start Access 2007, it displays the Getting Started window shown in Figure 3-2.

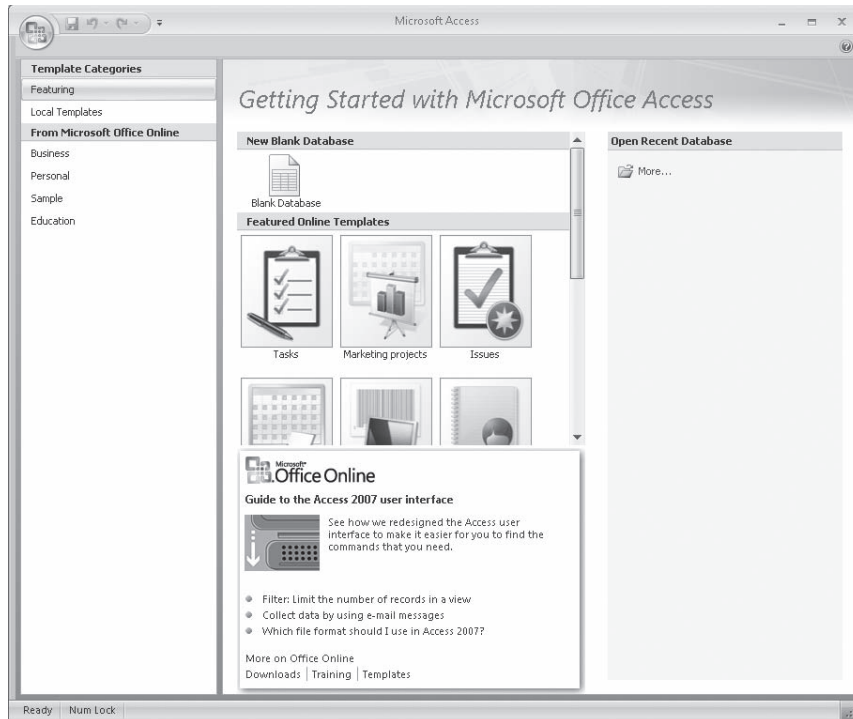


Figure 3-2 Access 2007 displays the Getting Started window every time you start the program.

Click the More link under Open Recent Database on the right side of the window to see the Open dialog box shown in Figure 3-3. In the Open dialog box, select the file Housing.accdb from the folder in which you installed the sample databases, and then click Open. You can also double-click the file name to open the database. (If you haven't set options in Windows Explorer to show file name extensions for registered applications, you won't see the .accdb extension for your database files.)

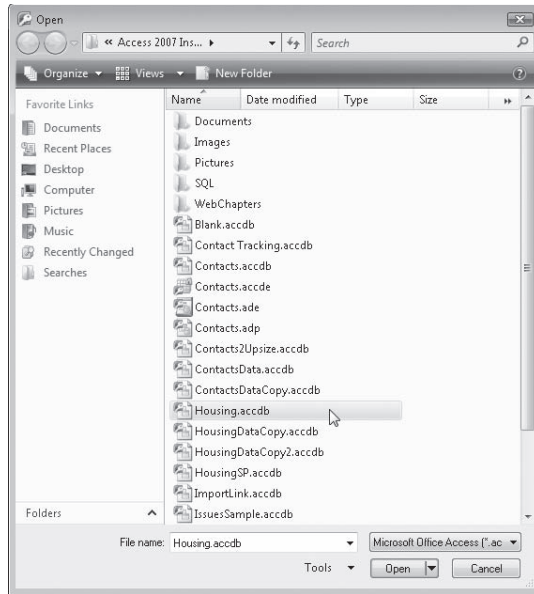


Figure 3-3 Use the Open dialog box to locate the database that you want to open.

When you open the Housing Reservations application, it displays a Not Trusted dialog box if you have not followed the instructions in the previous chapter to define the location of the sample files as trusted. If this happens, click the Close button to close the dialog box. The application also briefly displays a copyright information notice and then displays a message box instructing you to open the frmSplash form. Click OK to dismiss this message box, and then Access puts the focus on the frmSplash form in the Navigation Pane. (You can open the frmSplash form if you want to run the application.) Your Access window should look similar to Figure 3-4.

For an existing database, the Navigation Pane is always the same width as it was when you last set it. The title bar of the window normally shows the name of the database that you have open. As you'll learn later in this book, you can set options in the database to change the title bar of the main Access window to show the name of your application instead of Microsoft Access—we modified the sample database to display the title Housing Reservations on the title bar.

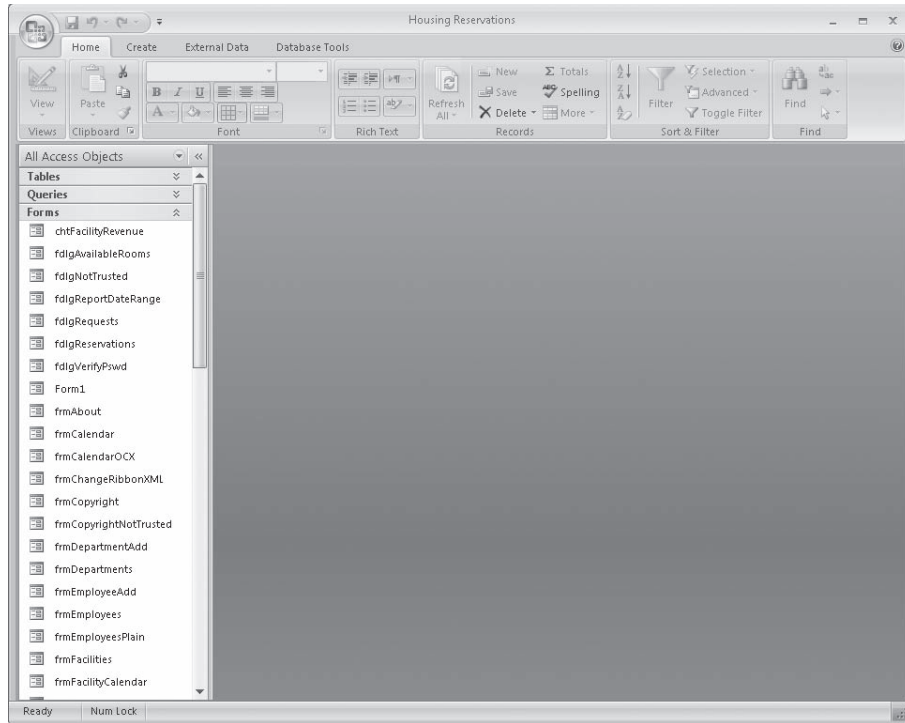


Figure 3-4 The Navigation Pane displays the objects defined in the Housing Reservations sample database.

As we discussed in the previous chapter, the Ribbon has four main tabs that are displayed at all times. As you explore Access 2007, you'll see that the Ribbon provides several contextual tabs that appear and disappear as you work with specific database objects and areas of the program. These contextual tabs make available commands that are useful only within the context of the object that has the focus and that object's current view. For example, it wouldn't make sense to show you table design commands when you have a table open to display its data (Datasheet view). Likewise, you don't need datasheet commands when you have a query open in Design view. We'll explain the various contextual tabs in more detail as we explore the database objects and other areas of Access in the following chapters.

Note

You can rest your mouse pointer on any command or option on the various Ribbon tabs for a second (without clicking the button), and Access displays a ScreenTip to help you discover the purpose of the button.

In the previous chapter, you learned that you can change how Access displays the list of objects in the database by using one of the built-in navigation categories (Object Type, Tables And Related Views, Created Date, and Modified Date) or by defining your own custom navigation category. You also learned that you can filter each navigation category to limit what group Access displays within each category so that you don't have to wade through a long list to find what you want.

In this chapter, we'll be exploring each of the types of objects in the Housing Reservations database, so click the Navigation Pane menu at the top of the Navigation Pane and click Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and be sure that you have clicked All Access Objects under Filter By Group, as shown in Figure 3-5. Your Navigation Pane should now look similar to Figure 3-4. You can collapse an entire group of objects by clicking on the group's header bar. If you open the Navigation Pane menu, you can see the names of some custom groups we have defined under Navigate To Category to help organize your work. You'll learn how to work with groups later in this chapter.

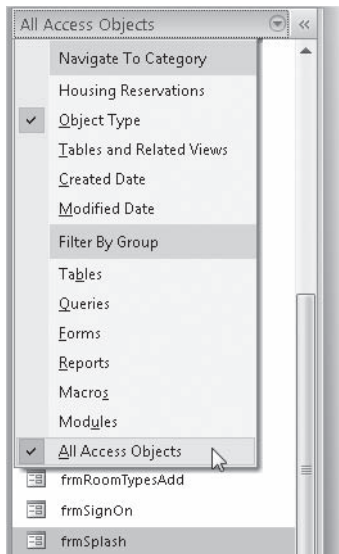


Figure 3-5 Select Object Type under Navigate To Category and then All Access Objects under Filter By Group to see all objects organized in groups by object type.

Tables

Click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane and select Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and select Tables under Filter By Group to display a list of tables available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-6.

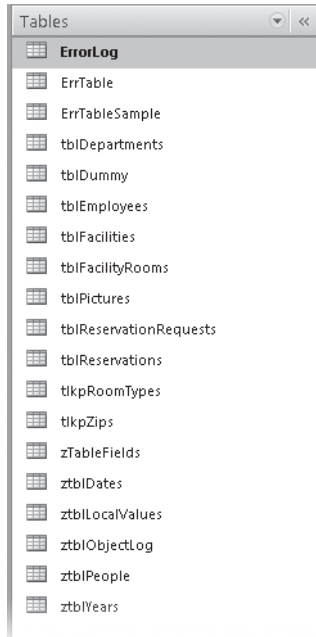


Figure 3-6 After filtering the Object Type category in the Navigation Pane, you can see only the tables in the Housing Reservations database.

You can open a table in Datasheet view to see the data in the table by double-clicking the table name in the Navigation Pane; or you can open the table in Design view by holding down the Ctrl key and double-clicking the table name. If you right-click a table name, Access displays a shortcut menu, as shown in Figure 3-7, that lets you perform a number of handy operations on the item you selected. Click one of the commands on the shortcut menu, or click anywhere else in the Access window to dismiss the menu.

INSIDE OUT

Turning on Single-Click

If you want to make it easier to open objects from the Navigation Pane, you can right-click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane and select **Navigation Options** on the shortcut menu. In the lower-right corner of the Navigation Options dialog box, select **Single-Click** under **Open Objects With** and click **OK**. The examples in this chapter assume you are using the default **Double-Click** setting.

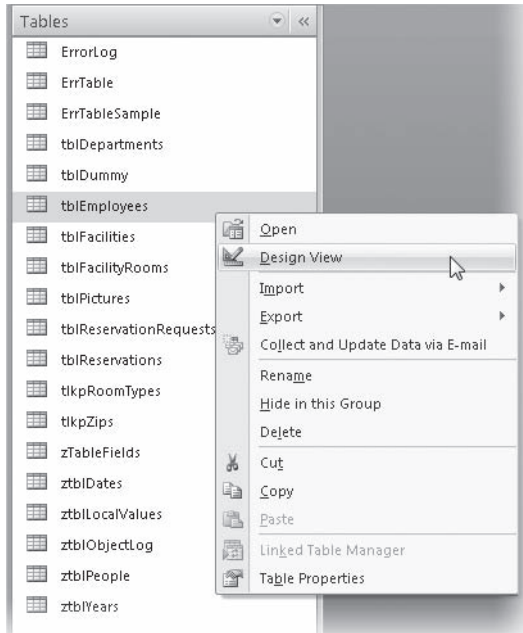


Figure 3-7 You can access many commands from the shortcut menu for a table in the Navigation Pane.

Table Window in Design View

When you want to change the definition of a table (the structure or design of a table, as opposed to the data in a table), you must open the Table window in Design view. With the Housing Reservations database open, right-click the `tblEmployees` table and select Design View from the shortcut menu; this opens the `tblEmployees` table in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-8. (Collapse the Navigation Pane to be able to see the entire width of the design area.) You'll learn about creating table definitions in Chapter 4, "Creating Your Database and Tables."

In Design view, each row in the top portion of the Table window defines a different field in the table. You can use the mouse to select any field that you want to modify. You can also use the Tab key to move from left to right across the screen, column to column, or Shift+Tab to move from right to left. Use the Up and Down Arrow keys to move from row to row in the field list. As you select a different row in the field list in the top portion of the window, you can see the property settings for the selected field in the bottom portion of the window. Press F6 to move between the field list and the field property settings portions of the Table window in Design view. Unlike previous versions of Access, pressing F6 again does not immediately move the focus back to the field list. If you press F6 repeatedly, the focus goes to the Navigation Pane, to the Ribbon, and then finally back to the field list.

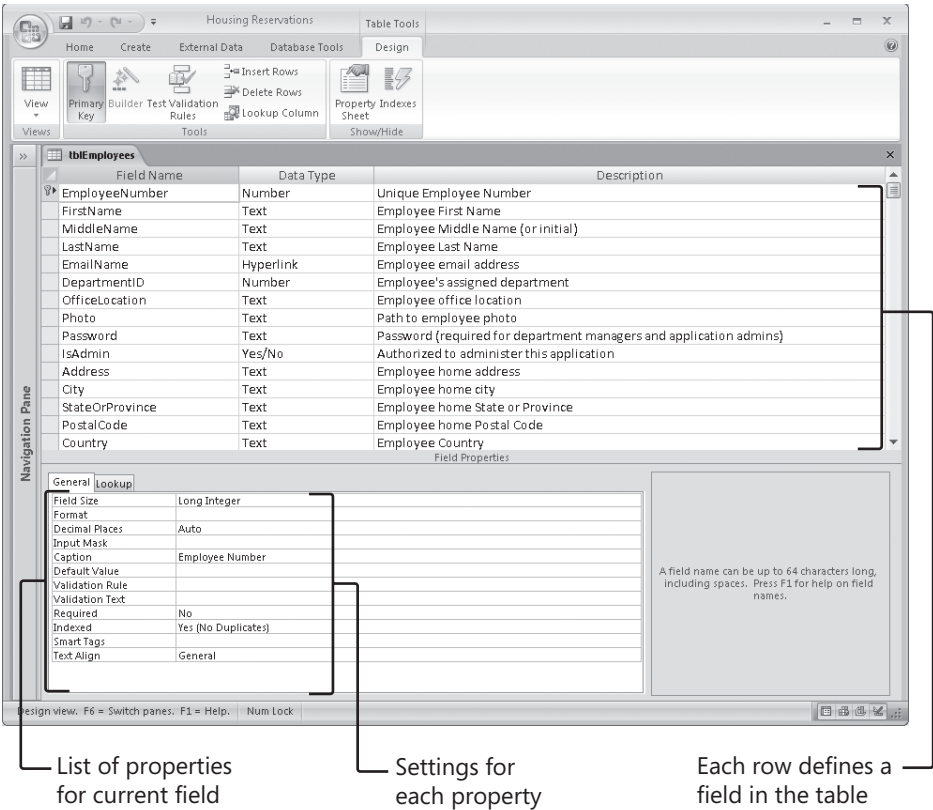
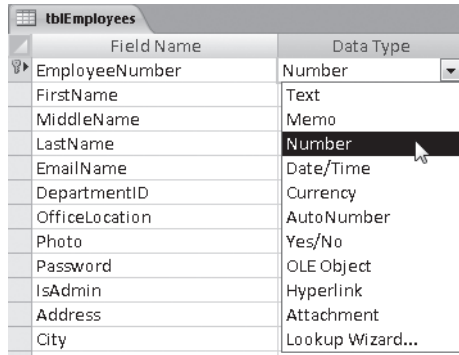


Figure 3-8 Open a table in Design view to change its structure.

Access has many convenient features. Wherever you can choose from a limited list of valid values, Access provides a list box to assist you in selecting the proper value. For example, when you tab to the Data Type column in the field list, a small arrow appears at the right of the column. Click the arrow or press Alt+Down Arrow to see the list of valid data types, as shown in Figure 3-9.

You can open as many as 254 tables (fewer if you are limited by your computer's memory). If you have selected Overlapping Windows in the Access Options dialog box, you can minimize any of the windows to an icon along the bottom of the Access workspace window by clicking the Minimize button in the upper-right corner of the window. You can also maximize the window to fill the Access workspace to the right of the Navigation Pane by clicking the Maximize/Restore button in that same corner. If you don't see a window you want, you can select it from the list of active windows in the Manage Windows command in the Window group on the Home tab on the Ribbon to bring the window to the front. Click the Close command from the Control Box in the upper-left corner or click the window's Close button in the upper-right corner to close any window.



Field Name	Data Type
EmployeeNumber	Number
FirstName	Text
MiddleName	Memo
LastName	Number
EmailName	Date/Time
DepartmentID	Currency
OfficeLocation	AutoNumber
Photo	Yes/No
Password	OLE Object
IsAdmin	Hyperlink
Address	Attachment
City	Lookup Wizard...

Figure 3-9 The Data Type list box shows you the available data types.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Why can't I see the Maximize/Minimize buttons on my table?

If you are using the tabbed documents interface (the setting used in the Housing Reservations sample database), each open object has its own tab to the right of the Navigation Pane. This option is the default for new databases you create in Access 2007. However, when you open older database files created in earlier versions of Access, the Document Window Options setting in the Access Options dialog box defaults to Overlapping Windows. With the Tabbed Documents setting, there is no need to constantly minimize and maximize object windows to switch views because each open object has an individual tab at the top of the Access workspace (the area below the Ribbon and to the right of the Navigation Pane). Clicking on these object tabs enables you to easily switch among any open objects, so Access 2007 does not provide the Maximize/Minimize buttons. To set your database to Overlapping Windows or Tabbed Documents, see “Using the Single-Document vs. Multiple-Document Interface” on page 83.

Table Window in Datasheet View

To view, change, insert, or delete data in a table, you can use the table's Datasheet view. A datasheet is a simple way to look at your data in rows and columns without any special formatting. You can open a table's Datasheet view by double-clicking the name of the table you want in the Navigation Pane or by right-clicking on the table name and selecting Open from the shortcut menu. When you open a table in Design view, such as the tblEmployees table shown in Figure 3-8, you can switch to the Datasheet view of this table, shown in Figure 3-10, by clicking the arrow in the Views group on the Ribbon and clicking Datasheet View from the list of available views. Likewise, when you're in Datasheet view, you can return to Design view by clicking the arrow in the Views group and clicking Design View from the available options. You can also switch views for the table by clicking the various view buttons on the status bar located in the lower-right corner of the Access window. You'll read more about working with data in Datasheet view in Chapter 7, “Creating and Working with Simple Queries.”

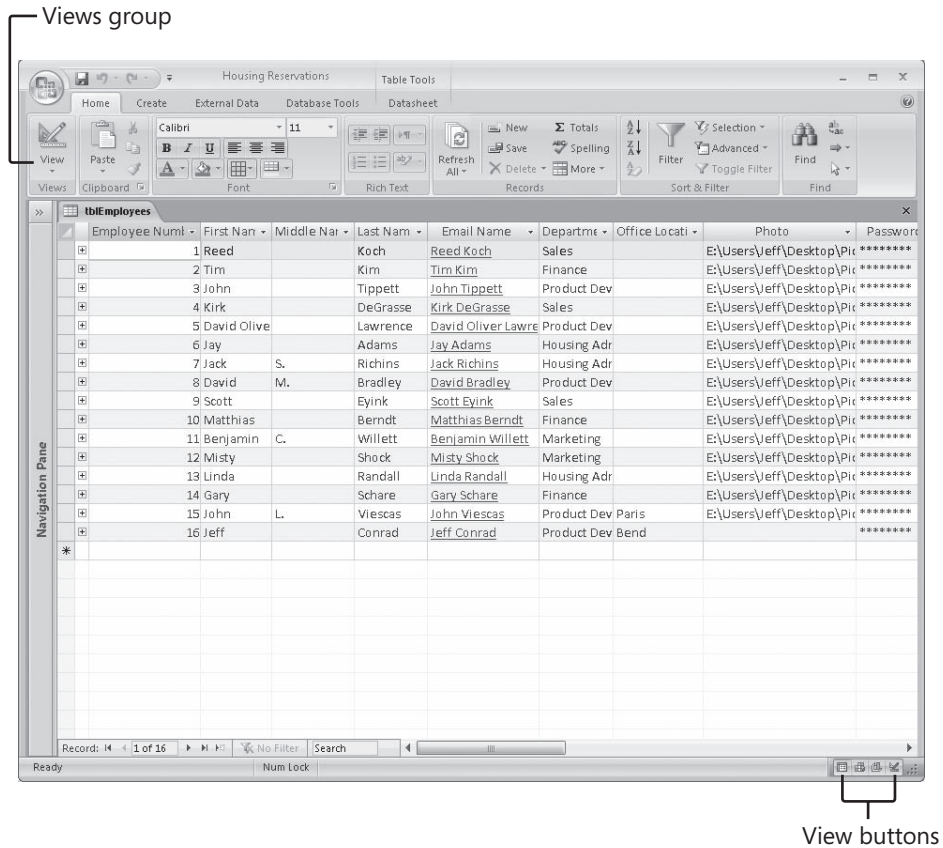


Figure 3-10 Use the Views button on the Ribbon or the individual view buttons on the status bar to switch from Design to Datasheet view.

As in Design view, you can move from field to field in the Table window in Datasheet view by pressing Tab, and you can move up and down through the records using the arrow keys. You can also use the scroll bars along the bottom and on the right side of the window to move around in the table. To the left of the horizontal scroll bar, Access shows you the current record number and the total number of records in the currently selected set of data. You can select the record number with your mouse (or by pressing F5), type a new number, and then press Enter to go to that record. You can use the arrows on either side of this record number box to move up or down one record or to move to the first or last record in the table. You can start entering data in a new record by clicking the New (Blank) Record button on the right.

Queries

You probably noticed that the Datasheet view of the tblEmployees table gave you all the fields and all the records in the table. But what if you want to see only the employee names and addresses? Or maybe you would like to see in one view information about employees and all their confirmed room reservations. To fill these needs, you can create

a query. Open the Navigation Pane menu, click Object Type under Navigate To Category if it isn't already selected, and then click Queries under Filter By Group to display a list of queries available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-11.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Why does my table have extra rows in the lower half of the screen like a spreadsheet?

You might notice in Figure 3-10 that there are extra rows beneath our existing records, and this grid very much resembles a spreadsheet. This is a departure from previous versions of Access that displayed only one row for each record in that table plus one for a new record. For tables in Datasheet view in Access 2007, the remainder of the space in the application window is filled with dummy rows that you cannot click into. In essence, these extra rows are simply placeholders for possible future records. It might be confusing to think of this grid as a spreadsheet because of its appearance, but you must remember that Access is not a spreadsheet. What you see is only a visual aid and does not denote actual records in the tables.

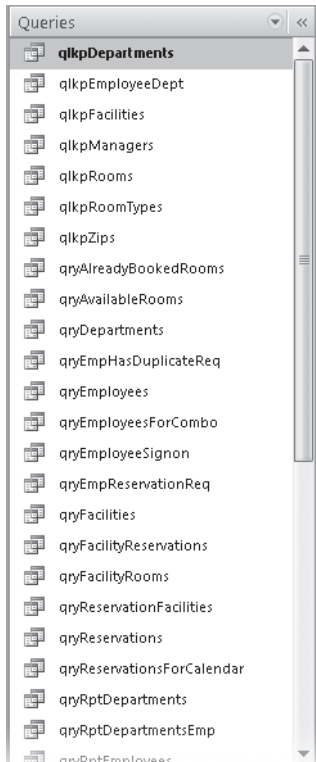


Figure 3-11 When you filter object types by queries in the Navigation Pane, Access displays a list of only the queries in the Housing Reservations database.

You can open a query in Datasheet view by double-clicking the query name, or you can open it in Design view by clicking on the query to select it, and then pressing Ctrl+Enter. You can also right-click a query and click the Open or Design View command on the shortcut menu.

Query Window in Design View

When you want to change the definition of a query (the structure or design, as opposed to the data represented in the query), you must open the query in Design view. Take a look at one of the more complex queries in the Housing Reservations query list by scrolling to the query named qryFacilityReservations. Select the query and then press Ctrl+Enter to display the query in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-12. Collapse the Navigation Pane to see more of the width of the query design.

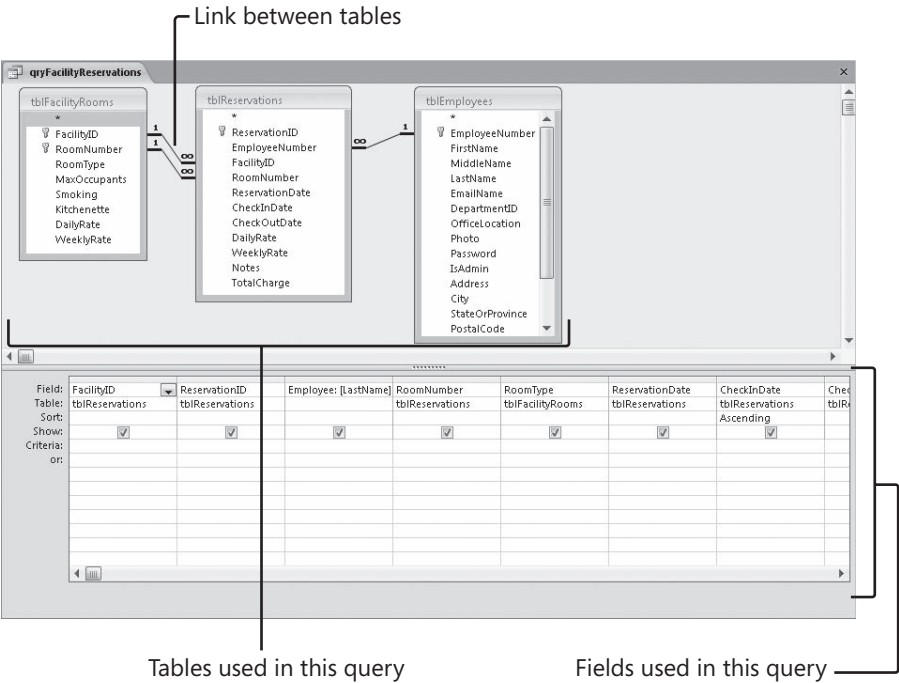


Figure 3-12 The qryFacilityReservations query in Design view shows data from three tables being linked.


In the upper part of a Query window in Design view, you see the field lists of the tables or other queries that this query uses. The lines connecting the field lists show how Access links the tables to solve your query. If you define relationships between two tables in your database design, Access draws these lines automatically when you include both tables in a query design. See Chapter 4 for details. You can also define relationships when you build the query by dragging a field from one field list and dropping it on another field list.

In the lower part of the Query window, you see the design grid. The design grid shows fields that Access uses in this query, the tables or queries from which the fields come (when you select Table Names in the Show/Hide group on the Ribbon's Design tab), any sorting criteria, whether fields show up in the result, and any selection criteria for the fields. You can use the horizontal scroll bar to bring other fields in this query into view. As in the Design view of tables, you can use F6 to move between the upper and lower portions of the Query window, but the F6 key also cycles through the Query window, the Navigation Pane, and the Ribbon.

You can learn how to build this type of complex multiple-table query in Chapter 8, “Building Complex Queries.” You can find this query used in the Housing Reservations database as the source of data for the fsubFacilityReservations form.

Query Window in Datasheet View

On the Design or Home tab on the Ribbon, click the View button to run the query and see the query results in Datasheet view, as shown in Figure 3-13. You can also right-click the query tab and click Datasheet View on the shortcut menu.



Facility	Reservation	Employee	Room	Type	Reservation	Check
South Campus Housing C	7	Koch, Reed	501	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen, Kitchenette	2/22/2007	2
Main Campus Housing A	1	Richins, Jack S.	810	Studio - Queen Sofa	2/6/2007	3
North Satellite Housing D	3	Lawrence, David	305	1BR Suite - 2 Queen Beds	2/13/2007	3
Main Campus Housing B	2	Richins, Jack S.	111	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen, Kitchenette	2/10/2007	3
Main Campus Housing A	12	Tippett, John	207	Room - King bed	3/14/2007	3
Main Campus Housing B	11	Lawrence, David	301	1BR Suite - 2 Queen Beds	3/13/2007	3
Main Campus Housing B	5	Tippett, John	214	Room - 2 Queen beds	2/15/2007	3
Main Campus Housing A	6	Berndt, Matthi	902	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen beds	2/19/2007	4
Main Campus Housing A	13	Bradley, David	111	1BR Suite - 1 King Bed, Kitchenette	3/23/2007	4
Main Campus Housing B	15	Adams, Jay	206	1BR Suite - 1 King Bed, Kitchenette	3/27/2007	4
Main Campus Housing A	4	Tippett, John	502	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen beds	2/14/2007	4
Main Campus Housing A	8	Bradley, David	509	Room - 2 Queen beds	2/25/2007	4
Main Campus Housing B	9	Kim, Tim	504	1BR Suite - 1 King Bed	2/25/2007	4
Main Campus Housing A	14	Richins, Jack S.	708	Studio - Queen Sofa, Kitchenette	3/24/2007	4
South Campus Housing C	17	DeGrasse, Kirk	101	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen, Kitchenette	4/2/2007	5
Main Campus Housing A	10	Tippett, John	707	Room - King bed	3/8/2007	5
South Campus Housing C	22	Bradley, David	103	1BR Suite - 1 King Bed	4/24/2007	5
Main Campus Housing A	20	Lawrence, David	309	Room - 2 Queen beds	4/9/2007	5
North Satellite Housing D	21	Bradley, David	402	1BR Suite - 1 King Bed, Kitchenette	4/12/2007	5
South Campus Housing C	16	Richins, Jack S.	111	Studio - Queen Sofa	3/27/2007	5
Main Campus Housing A	18	Bradley, David	702	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen beds	4/6/2007	5
Main Campus Housing B	19	Lawrence, David	610	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen, Kitchenette	4/8/2007	5
Main Campus Housing A	24	Tippett, John	207	Room - King bed	5/1/2007	5
Main Campus Housing B	28	Bradley, David	403	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen beds	5/7/2007	5
Main Campus Housing A	27	Willett, Benja	505	Room - King bed	5/6/2007	5
Main Campus Housing B	30	Randall, Linda	103	2BR Suite - 1 King, 2 Queen beds	5/15/2007	5

Figure 3-13 The Datasheet view of the qryFacilityReservations query shows you fields from three related tables.

The Query window in Datasheet view is similar to a Table window in Datasheet view. Even though the fields in the query datasheet shown in Figure 3-13 are from three different tables, you can work with the fields as if they were in a single table. If you're designing an Access application for other users, you can use queries to hide much of the complexity of the database and make the application simpler to use. Depending on how you designed the query, you might also be able to update some of the data in the

underlying tables simply by typing new values in the Query window as you would in a Table window in Datasheet view.

Forms

Datasheets are useful for viewing and changing data in your database, but they're not particularly attractive or simple to use. If you want to format your data in a special way or automate how your data is used and updated, you need to use a form. Forms provide a number of important capabilities.

- You can control and enhance the way your data looks on the screen. For example, you can add color and shading or add number formats. You can add controls such as list boxes and check boxes. You can display ActiveX objects such as pictures and graphs directly on the form. And you can calculate and display values based on data in a table or a query.
- You can perform extensive editing of data using macros or Visual Basic procedures.
- You can link multiple forms or reports by using macros or Visual Basic procedures that are run from buttons on a form.

Click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane, click Object Type under Navigate To Category, and then click Forms under Filter By Group to display a list of forms available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-14.

You can open a form in Form view by double-clicking the form name in the Navigation Pane. You can also open the form in Design view by clicking the form to highlight it, and then pressing Ctrl+Enter. Finally, you can right-click a form name and click a command on the shortcut menu. To create a new form, use the commands in the Forms group of the Create tab on the Ribbon.

Form Window in Design View

When you want to change the definition of a form (the structure or design, as opposed to the data represented in the form), you generally must open the form in Design view. As you'll learn in Chapter 12, "Customizing a Form," you can also set a form property to allow you to make changes in Layout view while you are designing the form. Take a look at the frmEmployeesPlain form in the Housing Reservations database. To open the form, scroll through the list of forms in the Navigation Pane to find the frmEmployeesPlain form, click the form to select it, then press Ctrl+Enter. This form, shown in Figure 3-15, is designed to display all data from the tblEmployees table. Don't worry if what you see on your screen doesn't exactly match Figure 3-15. In this figure, we opened the field list on the right so that you can see some of the main features of the Form window in Design view.

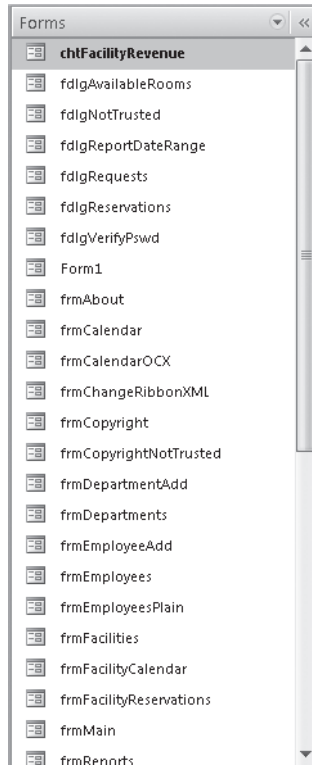


Figure 3-14 When you filter Object Type by Forms, Access displays a list of only the forms in the Housing Reservations database.

The large window in the center is the form design window where you create the design of the form. When you first open this form in Design view, you should see the Form Design Tools collection of two contextual tabs, Design and Arrange, on the Ribbon just to the right of Database Tools. These tabs are the action centers of form design—you'll use the tools here to add and arrange the design elements of your form.

On the right side of the window shown in Figure 3-15, you can see a field list for this form. This form gets its information from a query called qryEmployees that selects all the fields in the tblEmployees table and then sorts the rows by last name and first name. If you don't see the field list, click the Add Existing Fields command in the Tools group of the Design contextual tab. You can resize this window by clicking on the far left edge of the box and dragging it to a new width toward the left side of the screen. When your mouse pointer is positioned over the title bar, it changes to cross arrows. Click the title bar and drag it to the left and down to undock the window from the right side and position it where you would like. When you undock the Field List window, it becomes a window that floats on top of the design area. When you read about form design in Chapter 11, "Building a Form," you'll see that you can drag a field from the field list to place a control on the form that displays the contents of the field.

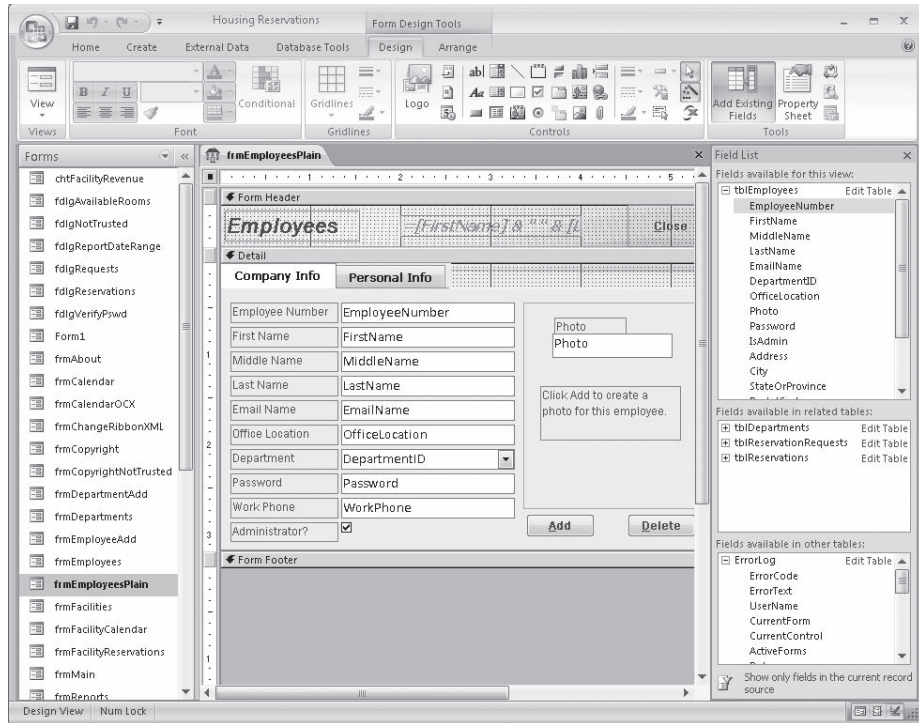


Figure 3-15 When you open the frmEmployeesPlain form in Design view, you can modify its design.

After you place all the controls on a form, you might want to customize some of them. You do this by opening the property sheet displayed in Figure 3-16. To see the property sheet, click the Property Sheet button in the Tools group of the Design tab. In Figure 3-16 we collapsed the Navigation Pane to show more of the property sheet.

The property sheet always shows the property values for the control selected in the form design. (The property sheet can also display the properties for the form or any section on the form.) Click the tabs at the top of the property sheet to display all properties or to display only properties for formats, data, or events. In the example shown in Figure 3-16, we clicked the text box named EmployeeNumber, near the top of the form, to select it. If you click this text box and then scroll down the list of properties for this text box, you can see the wide range of properties you can set to customize this control. As you learn to build applications using Access, you'll soon discover that you can customize the way your application works by simply setting form and control properties—you don't have to write any code.

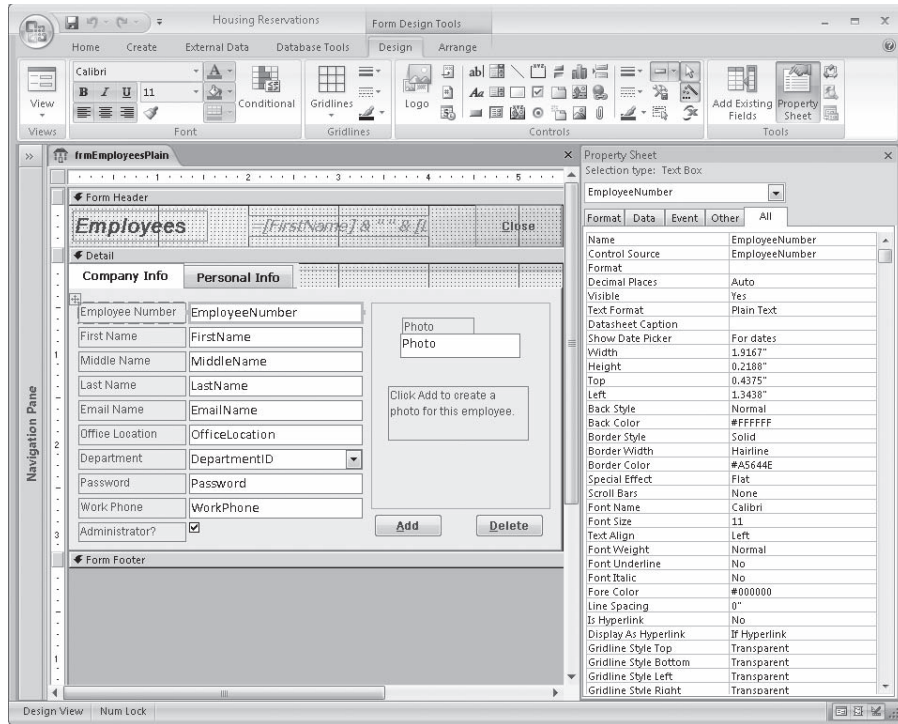


Figure 3-16 The property sheet lets you set individual properties for a form, form sections, or controls on the form.

If you scroll to the bottom of the property list, or click the Event tab, you'll see a number of properties that you can set to define the macros or Visual Basic procedures that Access runs whenever the associated event occurs on this control. For example, you can use the Before Update event property to define a macro or procedure that performs additional validation before Access saves any changes typed in this control. You can use the On Click or On Dbl Click event properties to perform actions when the user clicks the control. If you need to, you can even look at every individual character the user types in a control with the On Key event properties. As you'll discover later, Access provides a rich set of events that you can detect for the form and for each control on the form.

You might have noticed that Access made available all the commands and options in the Font group of the Design tab when you selected the EmployeeNumber control. When you select a text box on a form in Design view, Access enables the list boxes in this group to make it easy to select a font and font size, and it also enables buttons that let you set the Bold, Italic, and Underline properties. Underneath these buttons are three buttons that let you set text alignment: Align Text Left, Center, and Align Text Right. You can also set the font and fill colors using buttons in this group.

Form Window in Layout View

Access 2007 introduces a new view for forms called Layout view. If you have the frmEmployeesPlain form open in Design view from the previous section, you can switch to Layout view by right-clicking the frmEmployeesPlain tab and clicking Layout View on the shortcut menu. You should now see the form in Layout view, as shown in Figure 3-17. This unique view for forms gives the developer a fast and easy way to create and modify form designs.

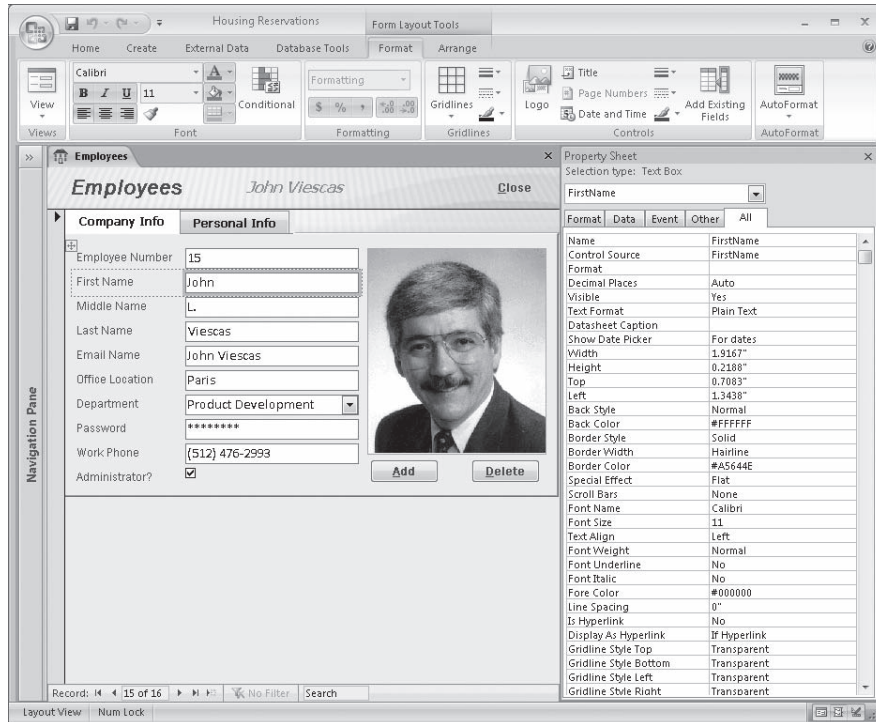


Figure 3-17 Layout view lets you see your data and also modify the design of the form.

Unlike Design view, Layout view enables you to work with the various control elements and form sections using existing live data. If, for example, you need to resize a text box to fit the available data, you do not have to continually switch back and forth between Form and Design view to see if your size change works effectively—you actually see data in the text box while resizing the control. This new What-You-See-Is-What-You-Get (WYSIWYG) form-authoring view provides the best of both worlds by combining the ability to change the structure of the data entry form at the same time you're accessing actual data.

In Layout view, if you have grouped a set of controls you can move them around the form design grid together to maintain their proximity and orientation to one another. In this sample form, we grouped all the controls in the first column in a stacked layout.

In Figure 3-18, you can see that we're dragging the Email Name field down below the Office Location field. A horizontal bar designates where Access will place the control after you release the mouse button. Because these controls are grouped, Access places the Email Name field and its label below the Office Location field and aligns them perfectly.

Figure 3-18 You can move a control within a group in Layout view, and Access keeps them perfectly aligned.

Form Window in Form View

To view, change, insert, or delete data via a form, you can use Form view. Depending on how you've designed the form, you can work with your data in an attractive and clear context, have the form validate the information you enter, or use the form to trigger other forms or reports based on actions you take while viewing the form. You can open a form in Form view by right-clicking the form's name in the Navigation Pane and clicking Open on the shortcut menu. If you still have the frmEmployeesPlain form open in Layout view from the previous section, you can go directly to Form view by clicking the arrow in the Views group and then clicking Form View.

Figure 3-19 shows a complex form that brings together data from three tables and loads the related employee picture from a file on your hard drive onto a screen that's easy to use and understand. This form includes all the fields from the tblEmployees table. You can tab or use the arrow keys to move through the fields. You can click the Personal Info tab to see additional information about the current employee. You can experiment with filtering by selection to see how easy it is to select only the records you want to see. For example, you can click in the Department field, select the department name, click the Selection button in the Sort & Filter group on the Home tab, and then click Equals "Selected Department" (where "Selected Department" is the department name you selected) to display records only for the current department.

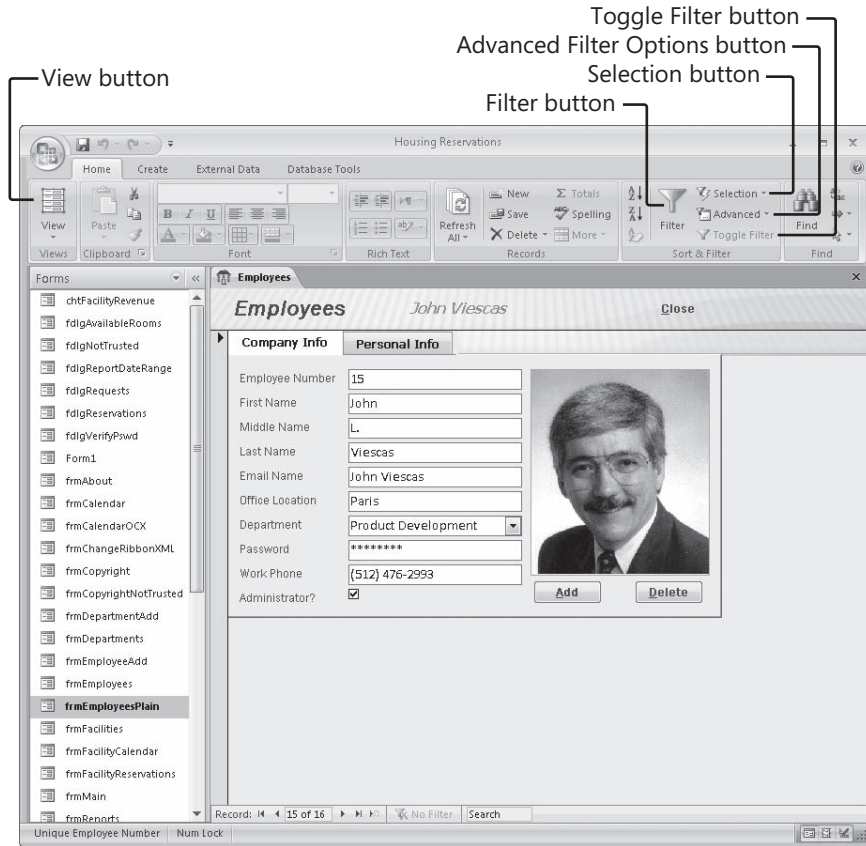


Figure 3-19 The frmEmployeesPlain form in Form view lets you view and edit employee data.

There are four other ways to look at a form: Datasheet view, PivotTable view, PivotChart view, and Print Preview. You can select the Datasheet view by clicking the arrow in the Views group and clicking Datasheet View to see all the fields in the form arranged in a datasheet—similar to a datasheet for a table or a query. When a form has been designed to display data in a PivotTable (similar to a spreadsheet) or graphed in a PivotChart, you can also select these views with the View button. You can click the Microsoft Office Button, move your mouse pointer to Print, and then click Print Preview on the submenu to see what the form will look like on a printed page. You'll read more about Print Preview in the next section.

Reports

If your primary need is to print data, you should use a report. Click the menu bar at the top of the Navigation Pane to open the Navigation Pane menu and click Object Type under Navigate To Category. Then open the menu again and click the Reports option under Filter By Group to display a list of reports available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-20.

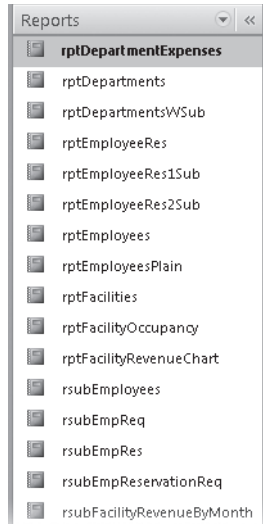


Figure 3-20 You can filter the Navigation Pane to show only a list of the reports in your database.

Although you can print information in a datasheet or a form, neither of these formats provides the flexibility that reports do when you need to produce complex printed output (such as invoices or summaries) that might include many calculations and subtotals. Formatting in datasheets is limited to sizing the rows and columns, specifying fonts, and setting the colors and gridline effects. You can do a lot of formatting in a form, but because forms are designed primarily for viewing and entering data on the screen, they are not suited for extensive calculations, grouping of data, or multiple totals and subtotals in print.

Report Window in Design View

When you want to change the definition of a report, you must open the report in Design view. In the report list for Housing Reservations, click on the rptEmployeesPlain report to select it, and then press Ctrl+Enter to see the design for the report, as shown in Figure 3-21. Don't worry if what you see on your screen doesn't exactly match Figure 3-21. We clicked the Add Existing Fields command on the Design tab under Report Design Tools to display the Field List window.

The large window in the center is where you create the design of the report. This report is designed to display all the information about employees by department. Notice that Design view for reports is similar to Design view for forms. (For comparison, see Figure 3-15.) Reports provide additional flexibility, allowing you to group items and to total them (either across or down). You can also define header and footer information for the entire report, for each page, and for each subgroup on the report. When you first open this report in Design view, you should see three new contextual tabs appear on the Ribbon just to the right of Database Tools under Report Design Tools: Design, Arrange, and Page Setup. These contextual tabs are the action centers of report design—you'll use the tools here to add the design elements you want.

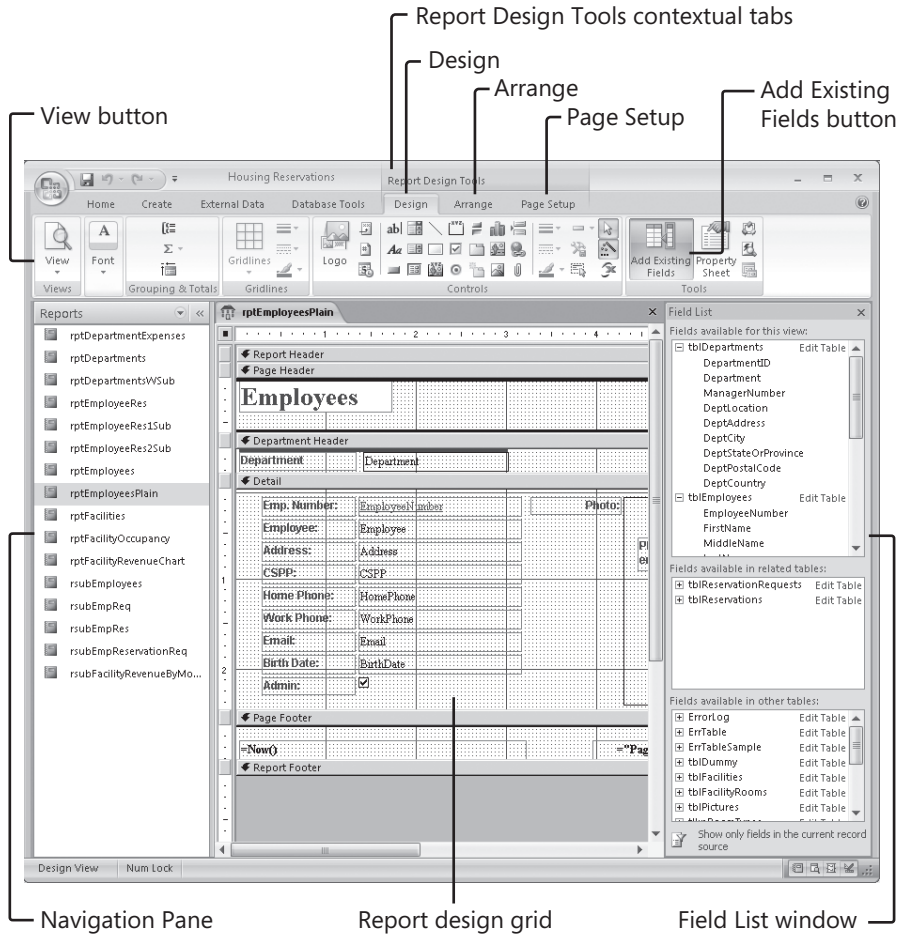


Figure 3-21 Open the rptEmployeesPlain report in Design view to modify its design.

On the right side of the window shown in Figure 3-21, you can see the field list for this report. This list shows all the fields returned by the record source for the report, qryRptEmployees—all the fields from the tblEmployees table and related fields from the tblDepartments table. If you don't see the field list, click the **Add Existing Fields** command in the **Tools** group on the **Design** contextual tab. You can resize this window by clicking on the far left edge and dragging it to a new width toward the left side of the screen. When your mouse pointer is positioned over the title bar, it changes to cross arrows. Click the title bar and drag it to the left and down to undock the window from the right side and position it where you would like. When you undock the Field List window, it becomes a window that floats on top of the design area. When you read about report design in Chapter 15, "Constructing a Report," you'll see that you can drag a field from the field list to place a control on the report that displays the contents of the field.

After you place all the controls on a report, you might want to customize some of them. Do this by opening the property sheet, which you can see on the right side of the screen in Figure 3-22. To see the property sheet, click the Property Sheet command in the Tools group of the Design tab. In Figure 3-22 we collapsed the Navigation Pane so you can see more of the property sheet.

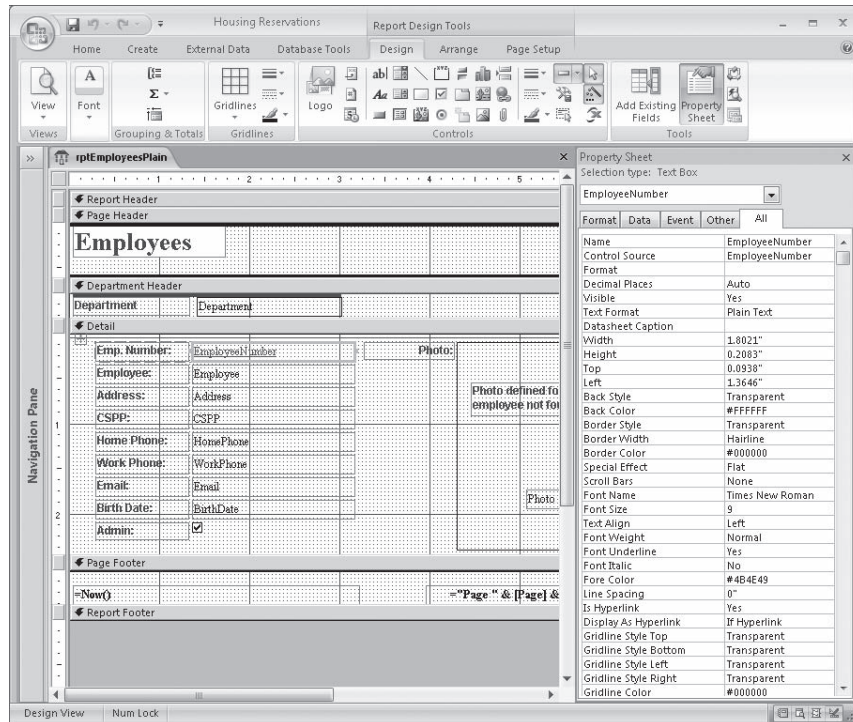


Figure 3-22 The property sheet lets you set individual properties for a report, report sections, or controls on the report.

The property sheet always shows the property settings for the control selected in the Report window. (The Property Sheet pane can also display the properties for the entire report or any section on the report.) In the example shown in Figure 3-22, we clicked the text box named EmployeeNumber to select it. If you click this text box, you can see that Access displays the EmployeeNumber field from the tblEmployees table as the control source (input data) for this control. You can also specify complex formulas that calculate additional data for report controls.

You might have noticed that Access made available some additional commands and options in the Font group of the Design tab when you selected the EmployeeNumber control. When you select a text box in a report in Design view, Access enables list boxes in the Font group that make it easy to select a font and font size. Access also enables buttons that let you set the Bold, Italic, and Underline properties. Underneath these buttons are three buttons that set text alignment: Align Text Left, Center, and Align Text Right. You can also set font and fill colors using buttons in this group.

Reports can be even more complex than forms, but building a simple report is really quite easy. Access provides report wizards that you can use to automatically generate a number of standard report layouts based on the table or query you choose. You'll find it simple to customize a report to suit your needs after the report wizard has done most of the hard work. You'll learn how to customize a report in Chapter 15 and Chapter 16, "Advanced Report Design."

Report Window in Print Preview

To see what the finished report looks like, click the arrow in the Views group and then click Print Preview when you're in the Report window in Design view. You can also right-click the report name in the Navigation Pane and then click Print Preview on the shortcut menu. Figure 3-23 shows a report in Print Preview.

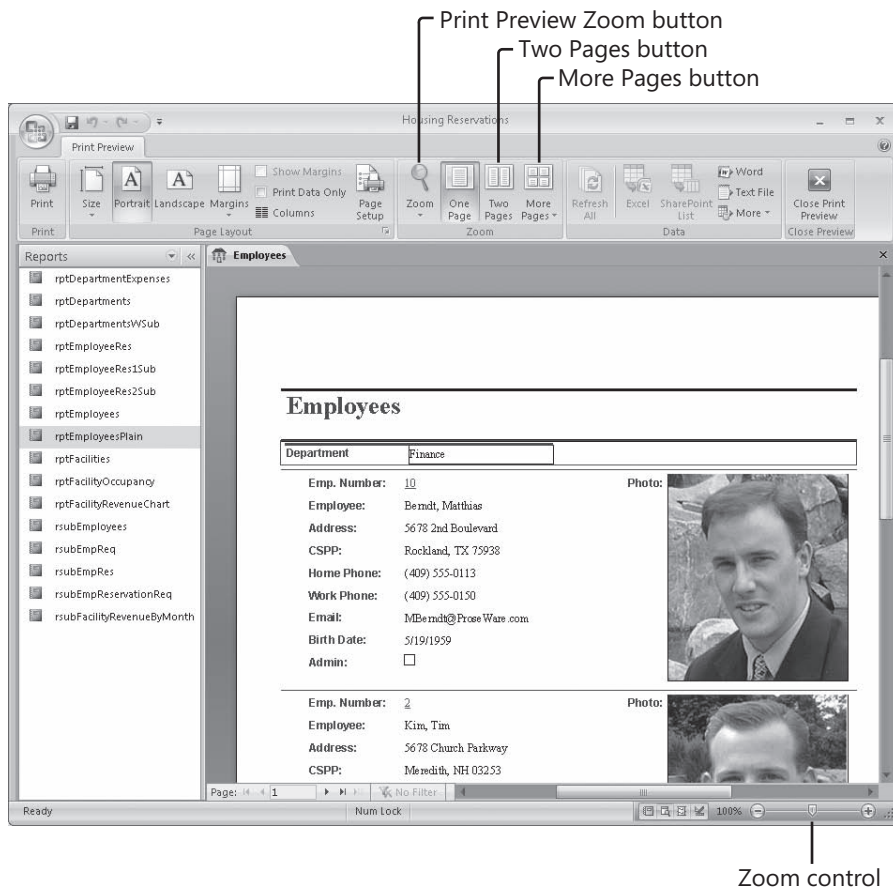


Figure 3-23 When you open a report in Print Preview, Access shows you how the report will look when you print it.

Access initially shows you the upper-left corner of the report. To see the report centered in full-page view in Print Preview, click the Zoom control in the lower-right corner of the status bar where it says 100%. Clicking that button automatically adjusts the zoom level percent so that you can see a full page of the report. To see two pages side-by-side, click the Two Pages button in the Zoom group of the Print Preview contextual tab. This gives you a reduced picture of two pages, as shown in Figure 3-24, and an overall idea of how Access arranges major areas of data on the report. Unless you have a large monitor, however, you won't be able to read the data. Click the More Pages button and then click an option (Four Pages, Eight Pages, or Twelve Pages) to see more than two pages. When you move the mouse pointer over the window in Print Preview, the pointer changes to a magnifying glass icon. To zoom in, click over an area that you want to see more closely. You can then use the scroll bars to move around in the magnified report. Use the Zoom control on the status bar to magnify or shrink your view. Access also provides several output options such as Word or Excel in the Data group of the Print Preview tab.

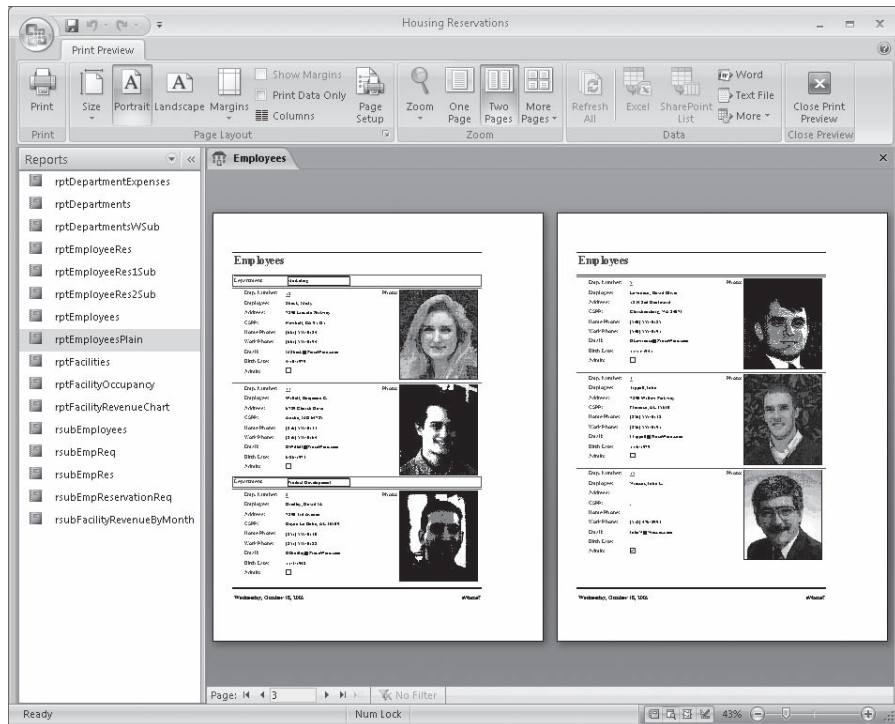


Figure 3-24 Click the Two Pages button to see two pages side-by-side in Print Preview.

Report Window in Layout View

Access 2007 introduces a new view for reports called Layout view. This unique view for reports gives the developer a fast and easy way to create and modify report designs.

Unlike Design view, Layout view enables you to work with the various control elements and report sections using existing live data. Similar to Layout view for forms, this new WYSIWYG report-authoring view provides the best of both worlds by combining the ability to change the structure of the report at the same time you're accessing the data.

To open the rptEmployeesPlain in Layout view, find the report in the Navigation Pane, right-click the report name, and click Layout View on the shortcut menu. Figure 3-25 shows the report in Layout view. In Figure 3-25 we collapsed the Navigation Pane so you can see more of the report design grid.

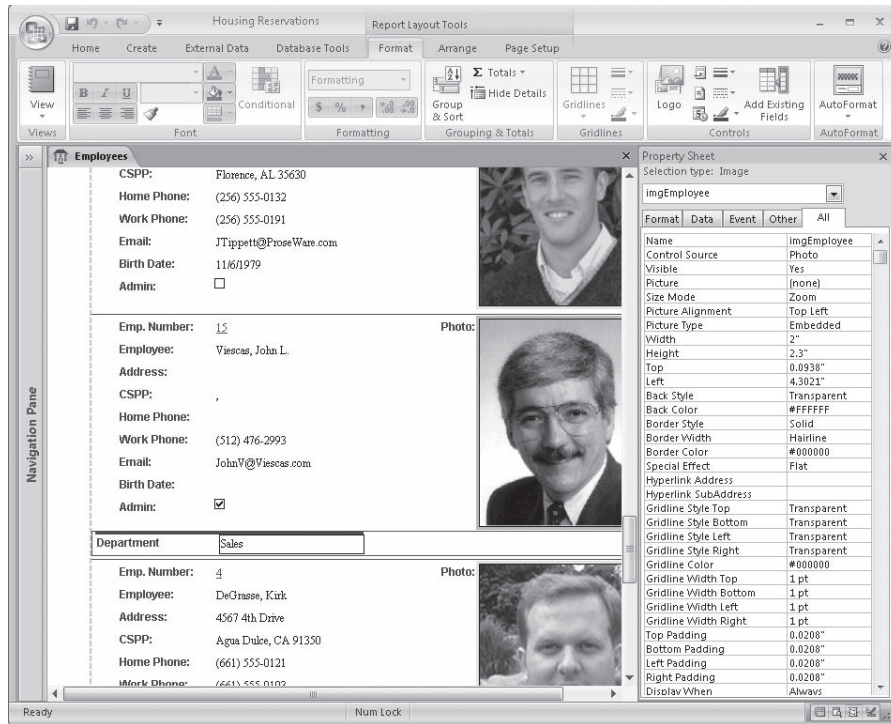


Figure 3-25 Similar to Layout view for forms, Layout view in reports lets you adjust design elements while looking at the data from your database.

Just like Layout view for forms, if you have grouped a set of controls, you can move them around the report grid together to maintain their proximity and orientation to one another. In Figure 3-26, you can see that we're dragging the Birth Date field above the Email field. A horizontal bar designates where Access will place the control after you release the mouse button. Because these controls are grouped, Access places the Birth Date field and its label above the Email field. The two controls swap places and align perfectly.

Emp. Number: 15
 Employee: Viescas, John L.
 Address:
 CSPP:
 Home Phone:
 Work Phone: (512) 476-2993
 Email: JohnV@Viescas.com
 Birth Date:
 Admin: ☒

Photo:

Figure 3-26 Access makes it easy to move controls around within a group in Layout view.

Report Window in Report View

In addition to Layout view, Access 2007 includes another new view for reports called Report view, an interactive view for reports that can respond to control events, much like data entry forms. If you have the rptEmployeesPlain report open in Layout view from the previous section, you can switch to Report view by right-clicking the Employees tab and clicking Report View on the shortcut menu. You should now see the report in Report view, as shown in Figure 3-27.

Housing Reservations

Home Create External Data Database Tools

View Paste Font Rich Text Refresh All Save Spelling Filter Selection Advanced Find

Reports

- rptDepartmentExpenses
- rptDepartments
- rptDepartmentsWSUB
- rptEmployeeRes
- rptEmployeeRes1Sub
- rptEmployeeRes2Sub
- rptEmployees
- rptEmployeesPlain**
- rptFacilities
- rptFacilityOccupancy
- rptFacilityRevenueChart
- rsubEmployees
- rsubEmpReq
- rsubEmpRes
- rsubEmpReservationReq
- rsubFacilityRevenueByMonth

Employees Employees

Employee: Tippet, John
 Address: 7890 Willow Parkway
 CSPP: Florence, AL 35630
 Home Phone: (256) 555-0132
 Work Phone: (256) 555-0191
 Email: JTippet@ProseWare.com
 Birth Date: 11/6/1979
 Admin: ☐

Photo:

Emp. Number: 15
 Employee: Viescas, John L.
 Address:
 CSPP:
 Home Phone:
 Work Phone: (512) 476-2993
 Email: JohnV@Viescas.com
 Birth Date:
 Admin: ☒

Photo:

Department: Sales

Emp. Number: 4
 Employee: DeGrasse, Kirk
 Address: 4567 4th Drive
 CSPP: 1234 5th Ave

Photo:

Employee home address Num Lock

Figure 3-27 When a report is in Report view, you can program controls to respond to mouse clicks to open a related form.

Previous versions of Access treat reports on screen as static. After you open a report on the screen, you can only view the report or print it. Report view in Access 2007 gives you the ability to interact with the report through filters to drill down to specific records and then print only this smaller group of records. You can include command buttons on your reports with Access 2007 and program the buttons to respond to a mouse click in Report view. In the new Report view, you can designate controls that respond to events as hyperlinks to provide a visual cue that an event occurs when clicking that control. In Figure 3-27, for example, observe that the Employee Number field looks like a hyperlink with a blue line underneath the data. (In Figure 3-27 we have scrolled down the records to show John's information.) Clicking the Employee Number field opens the frmEmployeesPlain form to display all information for that specific employee so that you can make any necessary changes. After closing the form and returning to the report, click the Refresh All command in the Records group of the Home tab on the Ribbon to see any changes you made to the data using the form reflected in the report. In Figure 3-27 you can see that the frmEmployeesPlain form opens on a new tab because we are using the tabbed interface.

Close the Form window and the Report window to return to the Navigation Pane.

Macros

You can make working with your data within forms and reports much easier by triggering a macro action. Office Access 2007 provides more than 70 actions that you can include in a macro. They perform tasks such as opening tables and forms, running queries, running other macros, selecting options from menus, and sizing open windows. You can also group multiple actions in a macro and specify conditions that determine when each set of actions will or will not be executed by Access.

Open the Navigation Pane menu and make sure Object Type is selected under Navigate To Category. Then open the menu again and click Macros under Filter By Group to display a list of macros available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-28. You can run a macro by right-clicking the macro name in the Navigation Pane and clicking Run on the shortcut menu. To open a macro in Design view, right-click the macro name and click Design View on the shortcut menu. To create a brand new macro, click the New Object Macro button in the Other group of the Create tab on the Ribbon.

Macros are a great way to learn about the basics of responding to events and automating actions in an Access database. However, for any application that you intend to distribute to others, you should use Visual Basic to handle events and automate actions. Nearly all the sample databases use Visual Basic exclusively. You can take a look at the design of a macro example in the Housing Reservations database by selecting the SampleMacro macro in the Navigation Pane, and then pressing Ctrl+Enter. Access opens the Macro window in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-29.

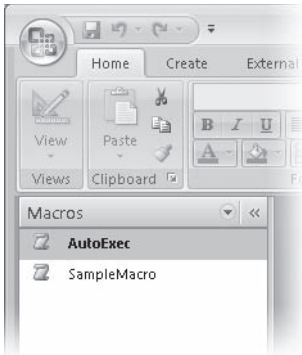


Figure 3-28 You can filter the Navigation Pane to show the Macros list in the Housing Reservations database.

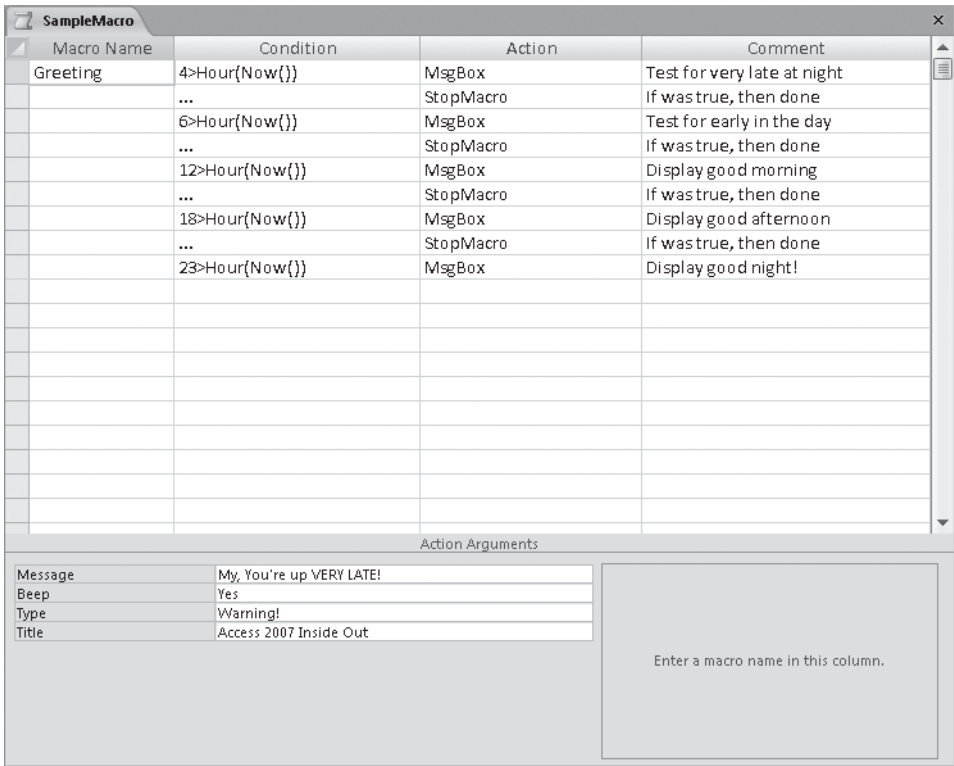


Figure 3-29 Open the SampleMacro macro object in the Housing Reservations database in Design view to examine and modify its definition.

You can design multiple macro actions within a single macro object and give each one a name in the first column. Any unnamed lines following a line with a name specified all

belong to the named macro. In the second column, you can optionally specify a condition test that must be true for the macro command on that line to execute. You can use a continuation indicator (...) on subsequent lines to specify additional commands that should also execute when the condition is true. You select the action you want to run from a list in the Action column and set the arguments required for the action in the Action Arguments section in the lower part of the design window. Some of the limitations of macros include limited ability to branch to other actions and very limited ability to loop through a set of actions.



If you want to see what this macro does, click the Run button in the Tools group of the Design contextual tab to execute it. You should see a greeting message appropriate to the time of day appear on your screen. To learn more about events and the macro design facility, see Chapter 18, “Automating Your Application with Macros.” You can find one sample application on the companion CD that is automated entirely using macros—WeddingListMC.accdb.

Close the Macro window now to return to the Navigation Pane.

Modules

You might find that you keep coding the same complex formula over and over in some of your forms or reports. Although you can build a complete Access application using only forms, reports, and macros, some actions might be difficult or impossible to define in a macro. If that is the case, you can create a Visual Basic procedure that performs a series of calculations and then use that procedure in a form or report.

If your application is so complex that it needs to deal with errors (such as two users trying to update the same record at the same time), you must use Visual Basic. Because Visual Basic is a complete programming language with complex logic and the ability to link to other applications and files, you can solve unusual or difficult programming problems by using Visual Basic procedures.

Version 2 of Access introduced the ability to code Basic routines in special modules attached directly to the forms and reports that they support. You can create these procedures from Design view for forms or reports by requesting the Code Builder in any event property. You can edit this code behind forms and reports by clicking View Code in the Tools group on the Design contextual tab when you have a form or report open in Design view. See Chapters 19 and 20 for details. In fact, after you learn a little bit about Visual Basic, you might find that coding small event procedures for your forms and reports is much more efficient and convenient than trying to keep track of many macro objects. You'll also soon learn that you can't fully respond to some sophisticated events, such as KeyPress, in macros because macros can't access special additional parameters (such as the value of the key pressed) generated by the event. You can fully handle these events only in Visual Basic.

Open the Navigation Pane menu and click Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and click Modules under Filter By Group to display a list of modules available in the Housing Reservations database, as shown in Figure 3-30. The Housing Reservations database has several module objects that contain procedures

that can be called from any query, form, report, or other procedure in the database. For example, the modMedian module contains a function to calculate the median value of a column in any table or query. The modUtility module contains several functions that you might find useful in your applications.

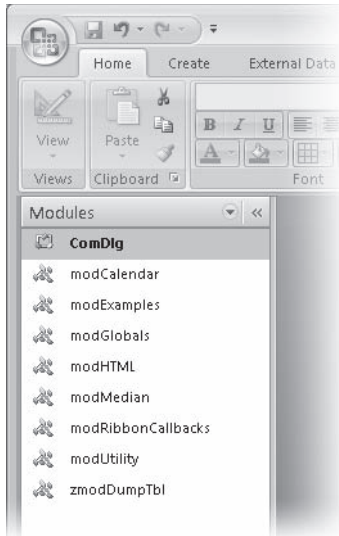


Figure 3-30 You can filter the Navigation Pane to display only the Visual Basic modules in the Housing Reservations database.

From the Navigation Pane, you can create a new module by clicking the arrow below Macro in the Other group of the Create tab on the Ribbon, or you can open the design of an existing module by double-clicking the name of the module in the Navigation Pane. In addition, you can right-click on the module name in the Navigation Pane and click Design View on the shortcut menu. In a module, you can define procedures that you can call from a macro, a form, or a report. You can also use some procedures (called functions) in expressions in queries and in validation rules that you create for a table or a form. You'll learn how to create procedures in Chapter 19.

Right-click the modUtility module in the Navigation Pane and then click Design View to open the Visual Basic Editor window containing the Visual Basic code in the module. Use the Procedure list box (in the upper right of the Code window) to look at the procedure names available in the sample. One of the functions in this module, IsFormLoaded, checks all forms open in the current Access session to see whether the form name, passed as a parameter, is one of the open forms. This function is useful in macros or in other modules to direct the flow of an application based on which forms the user has open. You can see this function in Figure 3-31.

Note that the Visual Basic Editor runs in an entirely different application window from Access, and it still uses the classic menus and toolbars found in earlier versions of Access. Click the View Microsoft Office Access button on the far left of the toolbar to easily return to the Access window.

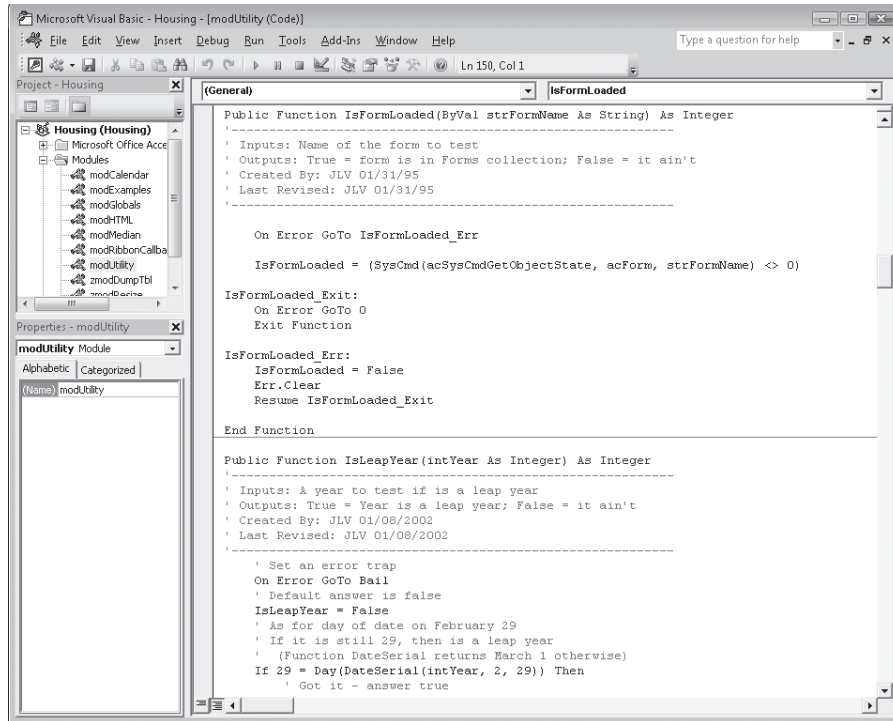


Figure 3-31 The Visual Basic Editor window displays the IsFormLoaded function in the modUtility module.

This completes the tour of the objects in the Housing Reservations sample database. Close the Visual Basic Editor window if you still have it open, return to the Access window, and close the database.

Exploring a Project File—Conrad Systems Contacts

Microsoft Access 2000 introduced an advanced facility that allows you to create a project file (with an .adp extension) that contains only your forms, reports, macros, and modules. When you create a new project file, you can specify an SQL Server database to support the project. SQL Server stores the tables and queries you use in the application that you design in the project. You can connect your project file to a Microsoft SQL Server version 6.5 database on a server or to a version 7.0 or later database on a server or on your desktop. Included with the 2007 Microsoft Office release is a special edition of SQL Server 2005, the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE), that you can install to run on your desktop computer.

You will see available tables in the server database as table objects in your project. You will also see views, functions, and stored procedures as query objects. Access 2007 includes special table and query editors to allow you to work directly with the objects in SQL Server. Your project file also contains forms, reports, macros, and modules that are virtually identical to those you develop in a desktop database (.accdb).



To see the differences in tables and queries in a project file, start Access and then open the Contacts.adp sample project file.

INSIDE OUT

Opening the Sample Project File

To be able to open the Contacts.adp file successfully, you must first install Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition or have access to an SQL Server edition that allows you Create authority. You can download SQL Server 2005 Express Edition from www.microsoft.com/sql/editions/express/default.msp. You'll need to attach the sample database files to a computer running a server version of Microsoft Windows, such as Microsoft Windows Server 2003, and possibly modify the connection properties of the sample project so that Access knows where to find the tables and queries required by the project. See the Appendix, "Installing Your Software," for details about how to install and start SQL Server 2005 Express Edition. See Chapter 26, "Building Tables in an Access Project," for details about setting project connection properties. If you are unable to perform these steps at this time, you can still read through this section to gain an understanding of some of the differences in project files.

Tables

Open the Navigation Pane menu and select Object Type under Navigate To Category. Open the menu again and select Tables under Filter By Group to see all the tables defined in the SQL Server database connected to the project. Figure 3-32 shows you the tables in the ContactsSQL database that is connected to the Conrad Systems Contacts project file.

As you can see, the Navigation Pane in a project file looks very similar to the one in a desktop database. You can see one additional object type listed on the Navigation Pane menu—Database Diagrams. SQL Server allows you to create a diagram of all the tables in your database, and the diagram shows you the relationships that you have defined between the tables.

Select the tblContacts table in the Navigation Pane, and press Ctrl+Enter to see the table in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-33.

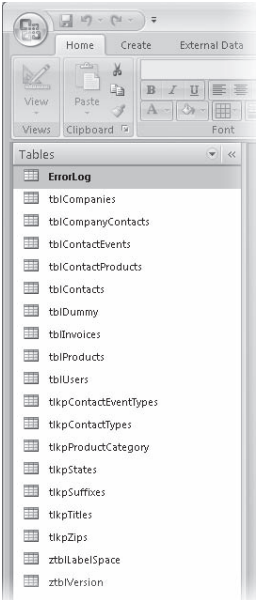


Figure 3-32 The Navigation Pane in a project file shows the tables in the database on SQL Server.

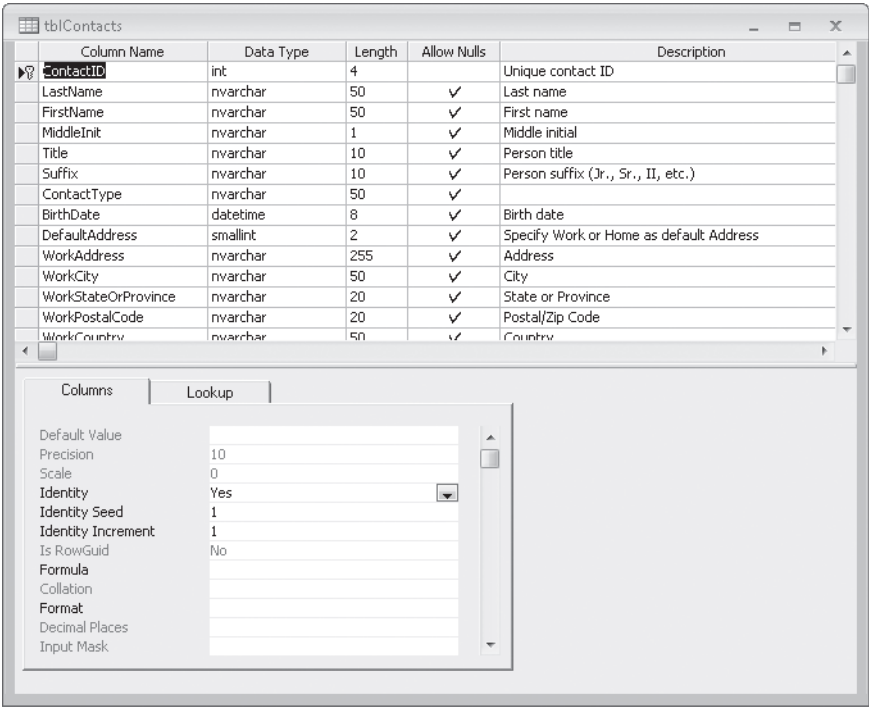


Figure 3-33 When you open a table in Design view in an Access project, you're editing the table in the database on SQL Server.

As you can see, the table design grid in an Access project is very similar to the one in a desktop database. (See Figure 3-8.) In an SQL Server database, fields are called columns. SQL Server supports a wider variety of data types than does a desktop database. Many of the data types are identical, but they have different names in SQL Server. For example, the int data type in SQL Server is the same as the Long Integer data type in a desktop database. If you want, you can click the Datasheet View option in the Views group to switch to Datasheet view, but you'll find that Datasheet view in an Access project is identical to that in a desktop database. You can learn all the details for creating tables in a project in Chapter 26. Close the table design grid to return to the Navigation Pane.

Views, Functions, and Stored Procedures

Although all query objects in a desktop database are called simply “queries,” you'll find that SQL Server stores three different types of objects—views, functions, and stored procedures—that Access displays when you click Queries under Filter By Group on the Navigation Pane menu, as shown in Figure 3-34.

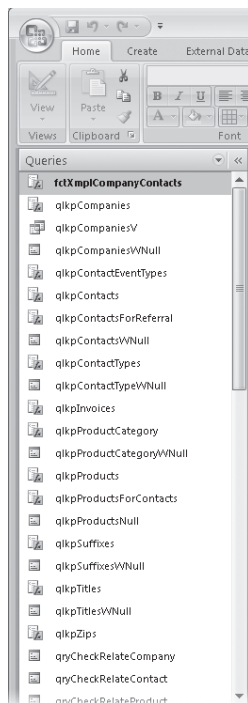


Figure 3-34 The list of queries in an Access project shows the views, functions, and stored procedures saved in the database on SQL Server.

A *view* returns a filtered view of data from one or more tables. A *function* can return a table, or it can perform a calculation and return a single value, much like a Visual Basic function. The difference is that a function that you see in the queries list in a project file

Navigation Pane executes on SQL Server, and the server returns the result to your project. A *stored procedure* can be as simple as an SQL statement that returns rows from one or more tables, or it can contain a complex program written in Transact-SQL that tests conditions and perhaps updates one or more tables in your database.

In many cases, you can design a view, function, or stored procedure using a query designer that is similar to the designer you use in a desktop database. To see an example of a query in a project file's query designer, scroll down the list of queries in the Conrad Systems Contacts sample project file, select qryContactProductsForInvoice in the Navigation Pane, and then press Ctrl+Enter. Access displays the query in Design view, as shown in Figure 3-35.

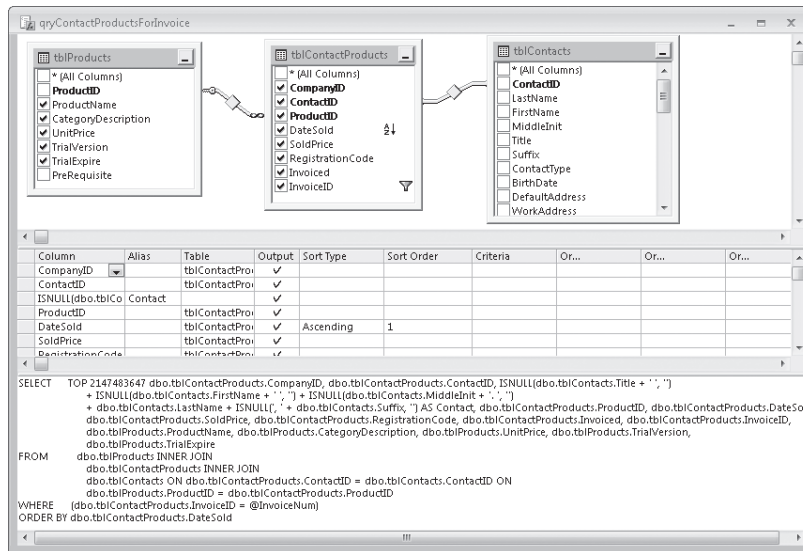


Figure 3-35 When you open a query in the query designer in an Access project, you're editing the view, function, or stored procedure stored in the server database.

This query is a function that returns columns from three tables. The query designer in an Access project is similar in some ways to the designer in a desktop database (see Figure 3-12). You can see the tables used in the query in the top pane of the designer window. In the center pane are the columns (fields) used in the query, but the columns are listed vertically here instead of horizontally as in the desktop database designer. In the bottom pane, you can see the SQL statement that defines this query on the server. You can close this pane if you like and work exclusively in the designer. Access reflects any change you make on the design grid by modifying the displayed SQL. When you become more expert in SQL, you can also modify the SQL statement, and Access changes the top two panes accordingly.



You can learn about the details of creating a query in an Access project in Chapter 27, "Building Queries in an Access Project," on the companion CD. For details about the SQL database language, see Article 2, "Understanding SQL," also on the companion CD.



You can close the query design grid now. As noted earlier, the forms, reports, macros, and modules in a project file are virtually identical to those in a desktop database. You can learn about the minor differences for forms and reports in Chapter 28, “Designing Forms in an Access Project,” and Chapter 29, “Building Reports in an Access Project,” both on the companion CD.

The Many Faces of Access

Access is not only a powerful, flexible, and easy-to-use database management system, but it is also a complete database application development facility. You can use Access to create and run, under the Windows operating system, an application tailored to your data management needs. Access lets you limit, select, and total your data by using queries. You can create forms for viewing and changing your data. You can also use Access to create simple or complex reports. Forms and reports inherit the properties of the underlying table or query, so in most cases you need to define such properties as formats and validation rules only once. Figure 3-36 gives you an overview of all the ways you can use Access to implement an application.

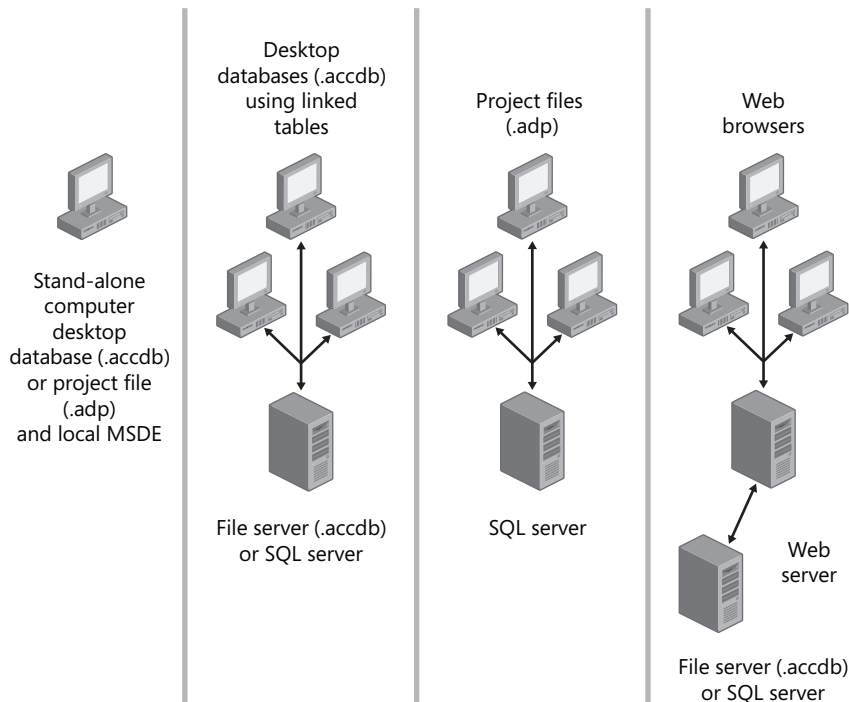


Figure 3-36 Although Access is primarily a desktop database system, you can use Access to build client/server applications.

The four sections in the figure illustrate ways you can implement an Access application, as follows:

- Using the desktop database facility or an Access project file linked to a local copy of MSDE, you can create a stand-alone application used by a single person.
- You can place a data-only desktop database on a file server or in a database in SQL Server and link the tables over a network to multiple desktop databases so that several users can share the same application.
- You can design your database in SQL Server and connect to the server over a network from multiple Access project files running on different computers.
- Finally, you can create Web pages that connect to data that you designed using Access.

To borrow a cliché, the possibilities are endless . . .

In this chapter, you've had a chance to look at the major objects in the Housing Reservations and Conrad Systems Contacts sample databases. You've also been introduced to the architecture of Access and the wide range of ways that you can use Access. You should be feeling comfortable that you can learn to use Access at the level appropriate to solve your database application needs. In the next chapter you'll learn how to create new databases and the tables you need to store your data."

Index

Symbols and Numbers

& (ampersand)

- concatenating expressions with, A40
- concatenating fields or strings with, 362
- displaying available characters in this position, 655

* (asterisk)

- all fields indicator, 352, 507
- designating next character as fill character, 653, 655
- multiplying expressions with, 365
- operator precedence for, 367
- record indicator icon, 390
- as wildcard, 169, 406, A49

\ (backslash)

- operator precedence for, 367
- rounding numeric expressions with, 365
- used to display character immediately following, 653, 655

{ } (brackets)

- added to SELECT statements in earlier Access versions, A61
- defining list of comparison characters in, A49
- delimiting names for SQL Server, 1460, A26
- displaying text in color specified, 654, 656
- enclosing object name in, 372, 919
- including query parameters in, 449
- inserted automatically in form control reference, 901
- placing around field names, 362
- when to enclose names in, 989–989

^ (caret)

- arithmetic operator, 365
- operator precedence for, 367
- testing character position in project file, A49

... (continuation indicator), 130

, (comma) as thousands separator, 653

\$ (dollar sign) in format string, 653, 655

-- (double hyphens) for single line comments, 1528

<< (double left arrow) button, 593

" " (double quotation marks)

- added to single text values, 355
- embedding text with, 653, 655
- placing delimited object names in, 1460
- string constants with, 362

>> (double right arrow) button, 593

= (equal sign)

- entering expressions after, 763
- equal comparison, 168, 169
- indicating equal joins, A42

! (exclamation mark)

- forcing left alignment, 653, 655
- not trusted macro actions marked with, 918
- preceding object name with, 989–990
- separating table and field names with, 372, 373

/ (forward slash)

- dividing numeric expressions with, 365, 373
- operator precedence for, 367

*/ (*forward slash), 1528

/* (forward slash*), 1528

>= (greater than or equal to sign)

- comparing values with, 168, 169
- returning query results with, 1503, A42

> (greater than sign)

- comparing values with, 169
- indicating uppercase characters, 655
- returning query results with, 1503, A42
- right arrow button, 593

<= (less than or equal to sign)

- comparing values with, 168, 169
- returning query results with, 1503, A42

< (less than sign)

- comparing values with, 168, 169
- indicating lowercase characters, 655
- left arrow button removing fields from Selected Fields list, 593
- returning query results with, 1503, A42

- (minus sign)

- arithmetic operator, 365
- as character in format string, 653, 655
- operator precedence for, 367

() (parentheses)

- adding to expressions, 370
- as characters in format string, 653, 655
- expression evaluation within, 367
- scalar functions in, 1542

% (percentage sign)

- multiplying value by 100 and including trailing percent sign, 654
- wildcard character for project file, A49

- . (period)
 - indicating decimal in numbers and currency, 653
 - rules for using with names, 990
 - separating table and field names with, 372, 373
- @ placeholder character, 655
- + (plus sign)
 - adding expressions with, 365
 - as character in format string, 653, 655
 - concatenating project file expressions with, A40
 - expanding subdatasheets, 387–390, 461
 - operator precedence for, 367
- # (pound sign)
 - placeholder character, 653
 - as wildcard, 169, A49
- ? (question mark) wildcard, 169, A49
- ' (single quotation marks), string constants with, 362
- _ (underscore)
 - default placeholder character, 171
 - using names in brackets with embedded, 989
 - wildcard character for project file, A49
- <> (unmatched) values, returning queries with, 1503, A42
- 0 placeholder character, 653
- 3-D object color, 565

A

- .accdb files
 - about, 6
 - backing up, 205–207
 - building database queries in query designer for, 1491
 - components of application files, 978
 - creating compiled version of, 272
 - DAO model with desktop applications, 981
 - databases vs. projects, 1450
 - packaging and signing, 1338
 - publishing or moving to SharePoint Services, 1210, 1212
 - return DAO recordset for Recordset property, 1104
 - user-level security unsupported for, 12
 - viewing database recordsets for action queries, 1523
- .accdc files, 1330
- .accdr files, 1329
- Access. *See also* applications; projects; user interface (UI)
 - ActiveX controls available in, 7–8
 - application development with, 13–15
 - architecture
 - application architecture, 978–981
 - overview, 99–101
 - backward compatibility with .mdb format, 979
 - building client/server applications with, 137–138
 - changes to user interface, 21
 - checking for updates, 97
 - color names in, A93–A99
 - converting from previous release, 1358–1360
 - compatibility with earlier versions, 1358–1359
 - conversion issues, 1359–1360
 - creating SharePoint list from within, 1198–1207
 - adding record to table, 1200–1201
 - creating custom list, 1203–1207
 - using existing list template, 1199–1203
 - data access pages, 14
 - data formats compatible with, 9
 - data types for, 158
 - domain functions, 1057
 - event-driven applications in, 867–869
 - examples of installed ActiveX controls, 726–727
 - executing commands, 1027–1028
 - exporting data to SharePoint Services, 1182–1186
 - file formats for, 6
 - importing SharePoint list to, 1186–1191
 - integration with Windows SharePoint Services, 1162–1163
 - linking SharePoint list to, 1191–1195
 - macro actions not trusted in, 916–918
 - managing queries in, 417
 - newsgroups for, 17
 - ODBC standard and, 253–255
 - opening for first time, 19–20
 - processing objects in, 560–562
 - RDBMS features of, 6–13
 - relationship between Visual Basic and, 942, 950
 - smart tags in, 664
 - spreadsheet data compatible with, 273
 - support for existing DAPs, 14, 100
 - switching to database software, 15–17
 - use of SQL in
 - brackets or parentheses added by Access, A34, A61
 - for database commands, A33
 - IN clause, A34, A46
 - parameter data types and equivalents, A53
 - using XML data in, 1136–1137
 - Web development environment in, 1127
 - working with Visual FoxPro tables in, 268
- Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime, 1328, 1340
- Access applications. *See* applications
- Access Database Engine (ACE)
 - DAO and, 982
 - no SQL modifications by, A61
- Access desktop databases. *See* .accdb files; databases
- Access Options dialog box, 87–97
 - automatic display of Macro Name and Condition columns, 891
 - categories
 - Add-Ins, 95

- Advanced, 93
- Current Database, 88–89
- Customize, 94
- Datasheet, 90
- Object Designers, 90–91
- Popular, 87–88
- Proofing, 92
- Resources, 96–97
- Trust Center, 96
- checking for keyboard shortcut duplicates, 1306
- Compact On Close check box, 251
- control IDs for built-in controls, 1277
- Document Window Options section of, 84–85, 89
- enhancing performance of linked data, 293–294
- Layout view
 - disabling, 1304
 - enabling for database, 671
- making changes affecting all datasheets, 1143–1144
- modifying
 - global settings in, 87–97
 - keyboard options for datasheets and forms, 392–393
- opening, 27, 84
- Perform Name AutoCorrect options, 192–193
- Quick Access Toolbar
 - customizing commands on, 28–31
 - revising command and macro order, 32
- setting
 - database startup properties, 1310–1312
 - overlapping or tabbed document views, 109
 - project form options, 1549–1551
- Show Add-In User Interface Errors check box, 1274
- table design options
 - for projects, 1488–1490
 - setting, 191–195
- Use Windows-Themed Controls On Forms check box, 559, 596, 692
- year formatting options, 191–192
- Access projects. *See* projects
- .accfl files, 153
- ACE (Access Database Engine)
 - DAO and, 982
 - no SQL modifications by, A61
- Action Failed dialog box, 912–913, 914
- action queries, 485–514. *See also* append queries; delete queries; make-table queries; update queries
 - about, A33, A71
 - appending data, 485, 502–507
 - creating append queries, 503–506
 - running append queries, 506–507
 - SQL overview for append queries, A73–A75
 - using stored procedures for, 1519–1522
 - cautions about viewing database or project recordsets for, 1523
 - defined, 347
 - deleting data
 - about delete queries, 485
 - testing rows affected by delete queries, 507–510
 - using delete query, 510–511
 - fields discarded in conversion from select queries, 490
 - icons for, 490
 - make-table queries, 485, 495–502
 - about, 495–496
 - creating, 496–500
 - defined, 485
 - limitations of, 501
 - running, 500–502
 - syntax variants for, A34
 - troubleshooting, 512–514
 - types of, 485
 - updating data, 486–495
 - about update queries, 485
 - converting select to update query, 488
 - multiple fields, 491–493
 - running update queries, 489–491
 - testing data updates, 486–487
- actions. *See* macro actions
- activating
 - Date Picker for text box controls, 727
 - hyperlinks, 398
- Active Server Pages. *See* ASPs (Active Server Pages)
- ActiveX controls
 - Calendar, 729–730
 - defined, 726
 - examples of installed, 726–727
 - selecting, 727–728
 - using in distributed applications, 1068
- ActiveX Data Objects (ADO)
 - architecture of, 985–987
 - Find method in, 1104
 - introduction of, 981
 - ODBC and, 254
 - recordsets
 - difficulties using, 982
 - working with, 1001–1005
 - using with dynamic Web pages, 1159, 1160
 - using as interface for ODBC databases, 255
- ActiveX objects. *See also* ActiveX Data Objects (ADO)
 - displaying in forms, 533–535
 - methods for controls, 7–8
 - size limitations of, 201
 - using with dynamic Web pages, 1159, 1160
- Add A Group option, 794
- Add A Sort option, 794

Add Generated Key button (Table Analyzer Wizard), 237

Add Table dialog box, 1486, 1496

Add Watch dialog box, 957

add-in security restrictions, 38

Add-Ins category (Access Options dialog box), 95

addresses

e-mail

finding in associated table, 317-318

selecting source for, 315-316, 333-334

selecting table containing, 316-317, 332-333

entering

individual, 321-322

or selecting in form, 548

ADO. *See* ActiveX Data Objects (ADO)

ADODB data model, 985, 986-987

ADOX data model, 985, 986-987

.adp files, 981. *See also* Contacts.adp project file; projects

about, 132-133, 1448

application engine used by, 978-979

cautions viewing project recordsets for action queries, 1523

connecting to new SQL Server database, 1448-1451

installing SQL Server 2005 Express Edition to build, 1349

projects vs. databases, 1450

using with SQL Server, 6

views, functions, and stored procedures in, 135-137

Advanced category (Access Options dialog box), 93

Advanced Filter button, 385, 402

Advanced Filter Design window, 403-405

Advanced Filter/Sort window, 556

advanced form design

basing on multiple-table query, 686-691

conditional formatting, 716-719

creating multiple-page forms, 723-726

example of, 520

illustrated, 725, 726

page break control, 724, 725

planning, 724

setting Cycle property, 726, 1080

displaying values in option group, 714-716

embedded subforms, 692-713

creating, 703-706

creating main form, 707-710

defining subdatasheet subform, 710-713

designating main form source, 706-707

designing innermost, 696-701

displaying complex information with, 1577

editing controls in inner forms, 709

setting up first level subform, 701-702

sizing controls in Form view, 704

specifying query data source for, 693-696

uses for, 692-693

PivotChart forms, 730-734

building, 731-732

designing, 538-539, 730

embedding linked PivotChart, 730, 733-734

PivotTable forms, 538-539

tab controls, 719-723

about, 530

property settings for, 723

setting Page Index property, 721

types of, 719

working with, 720-722

advanced report design, 811-863

adding PivotChart to report, 860-863

adding values across group, 837-838

building queries for complex reports, 812-813

calculating

grand totals, 839-840

percentages, 840, 843-844

totals on expressions, 838

concatenating text strings, 841-842

conditional formatting, 848-851

custom Ribbon for sample reports, 811

defining grouping and sorting criteria, 816-818

embedding subreports, 741-744, 851-859

hiding redundant values, 840-841, 842

numbering report lines, 845-848

performing calculations on detail line, 833-837

print date and page numbers on, 830-833

section properties, 819-822

structuring basics in Report Wizard, 813-815

AfterUpdate events, 931, 937

aggregate expressions, 838

aggregate functions

about, A35

available as Group By options in query designer, 1506

defining in totals queries, 435-436, 437

limitations updating, 1508

using in SELECT queries, A35

aggregate queries, 1505

alerts

Message Bar, 35

notifying if SharePoint list data modified, 1196

turning off warning smart tags, 771

warning messages for reserved words or function names, 159

aliases

assigning to query field lists, 496, 497

specifying for column with ORDER BY clause, A62

alignment

control layouts for column, 637-638

effect of screen resolution on, 611

- Font group options for, 583
- forcing left, 653, 655
- form label, 619–621
- snapping items to grid, 618, 619
- tabbing across page boundary with correct, 1080–1082
- All tab (Property Sheet window)**
 - listing of control properties, 666–669
 - listing of form properties, 676–680
- Allow Additions property**, 674, 1554–1555
- Allow Deletions property**, 674, 1554–1555
- Allow Design Changes property**, 589
- Allow Edits property**, 674, 1554–1555
- Allow Layout view**, 589
- ALTER PROCEDURE statement**, 1527
- Always Use Event Procedures check box (Access Options dialog box)**, 906
- American National Standards Institute (ANSI)**, 253
- ampersand (&) character**
 - concatenating expressions with, A40
 - concatenating fields or strings with, 362
 - displaying available characters in this position, 655
- anchoring controls in Layout view**, 623–624
- AND operator**
 - constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
 - expressing in query designer, A55
 - results using OR vs., 357–359
 - truth tables for, A56
- ANSI (American National Standards Institute)**, 253
- Append dialog box**, 505
- append queries**, 502–507
 - command on Design contextual tab for, 488
 - creating, 503–506
 - defined, 485
 - icon for, 490
 - make-table vs., 502
 - running, 506–507
 - SQL overview for, A73–A75
 - stored procedures for appending data, 1519–1522
- append values queries**
 - inserting parameters in, 1520–1522
 - syntax of, 1519–1520
- application design worksheet**
 - subjects, A14, A15, A16
 - tasks, A9, A10, A12
- application engine in Access**, 978, 979
- application shortcuts**, 1331–1334
 - adding parameters to target file name, 1332
 - command-line options for, 1333–1334
 - setting properties for, 1331–1332, 1334
- applications**. *See also* .accdb files; automating
 - Active X controls in, 1068
 - building client/server, 137–138
 - compiling
 - before production, 1316–1317
 - errors with procedures within procedures, 947
 - flagging undeclared variables during, 963
 - setting VB options for, 949–950
 - version of .mdb or .accdb files, 272
 - controlling flow with forms, 517–518
 - custom Ribbons for, 1266–1279, 1283–1302
 - adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
 - building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
 - creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297
 - customizing tabs, 1274–1275
 - disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
 - displaying errors, 1274
 - dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
 - hiding existing elements, 1271–1272
 - hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
 - loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
 - loading XML for, 1284–1287
 - setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
 - testing, 1270, 1272–1273
 - using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296
 - working with USysRibbons table, 1266–1269
 - XML code listing for, 1292–1294
 - designing database, A3–A31
 - charting task flow, A4
 - constructing application, A5
 - data analysis, A13–A16
 - database design concepts, A16–A28
 - designing prototype and user interface, A5
 - identifying data elements, A5
 - identifying tasks, A4
 - organizing data, A5
 - overview, A3–A4, A6
 - process-driven and data-driven design, A7
 - rationale of order-entry examples for, A8
 - strategies for, A7–A13
 - testing, reviewing, and refining, A6
 - understanding work process, A4
 - when to break design rules, A28–A31
 - developing in Access, 13–15
 - disabling Layout view, 1304
 - distributing, 1319–1340
 - creating application shortcut, 1331–1334
 - encrypting database with password, 1334–1336
 - execute-only databases, 1329–1330
 - packaging and signing database, 1336–1339
 - understanding runtime mode execution, 1328–1329
 - using linked tables in desktop database, 1320–1328
 - working with Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime, 1328, 1340

applications, *continued*

- event-driven Access, 867–869
 - execute-only
 - distributing databases as, 1329–1330
 - preventing users switching to Design view for, 671
 - property settings for, 1310–1312
 - runtime mode and, 1328–1329
 - fine-tuning with Performance Analyzer, 1302–1303
 - keeping Connect property current for, 297
 - macro action running another, A118
 - macros in, 887–940
 - actions not trusted, 916–918
 - automating tasks with, 918–938
 - brackets inserted in reference to control on form, 901
 - conditional expressions in, 900–901
 - converting to Visual Basic, 938–940
 - defining multiple actions, 895–897
 - embedded, 901–907
 - grouping, 897–900
 - Hourglass automatically restored by, 897
 - recommendations about, 890
 - saving, 893–894
 - temporary variables, 907–910
 - testing, 894–895
 - trapping errors, 910–915
 - uses of, 887, 888–889
 - working with Macro window, 890–893
 - maintaining data integrity, 413
 - previewing reports for sample, 738
 - starting and running, 1310–1316
 - intercepting Ctrl+F4 with AutoKeys macro, 1315–1316
 - setting database startup properties, 1310–1312
 - starting and stopping application, 1312–1315
 - switchboard forms for, 1305–1310
 - checking for duplicate shortcuts, 1305–1306
 - designing in Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310
 - illustrated, 1305
 - upsizing to projects, 533
- architecture**
- Access, 99–101
 - Access application, 978–981
 - ADO, 985–987
 - DAO, 981–985
 - form, 560–561
 - RibbonX, 1287, 1301
 - Web, 1137–1139
- archiving data**
- with append query, 503–506
 - deleting inactive data with delete queries, 510–511
- argument boxes in Macro window, 892–893**

arguments

- AskEdit macro, 933–934
 - DatePart function interval, 365
 - entering macro, 890–891
 - SyncWeddingAndCity macro, 926
- arithmetic expressions, 364–370**
- concatenating Null values in, 364, 420
 - operator precedence in, 367
 - operators used in, 364–365
 - using DateDiff function in, 365–366
- arithmetic functions, A85–A86**
- Arrange contextual tab, 564, 618**
- arrays declared with ReDim statement, 974–975**
- arrow keys, 392**
- Ascending button, 402, 409**
- ascending sort order, 378**
- ASP.NET, 1160–1161, 1162**
- ASPs (Active Server Pages)**
- creating dynamic Web pages with, 1158
 - designed for IIS, 1159
 - exporting XML data as, 1249, 1250
- Assets template, 152, 153**
- assignment statements, 952–953**
- asterisk (*)**
- all fields indicator, 352, 507
 - designating next character as fill character, 653, 655
 - multiplying expressions with, 365
 - operator precedence for, 367
 - record indicator icon, 390
 - as wildcard, 169, 406, A49
- asterisk icon, 390**
- attachment controls, 530–533**
- Attachment data type, 8–9, 158, 160–161**
- attachment fields**
- indexes undefinable using, 189
 - inserting files in, 546
- Attachments dialog box, 532**
- attributes**
- associated with Ribbon controls and callbacks, 1290–1292
 - defined, 5
 - list of Ribbon control, 1288–1289
- authentication errors using SQL Server 2005 Express with Vista, 258**
- Authentication Mode page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1353–1354**
- Auto Expand property, 605**
- Auto Indent check box (Options dialog box), 948–949**
- Auto Resize property, 622**
- Auto Syntax Check check box (Options dialog box), 948**
- AutoCalc button, 475**
- AutoCorrect feature, 92, 193**

AutoCorrect smart tag, 233

AutoExec macro

- about, 890
- starting applications with, 1310, 1312
- using, 896

AutoFilter button, 475

AutoFormat

- applying to reports in Layout view, 807–809
- defining control defaults as, 681

AutoFormat Wizard, 681

AutoKeys macro, 1052, 1315–1316

automatically processing e-mail replies, 313, 314

automating

- applications
 - controlling tabbing on multiple-page form, 1080–1082
 - linking to data in other form or report, 1098–1094
- complex tasks, 1105–1114
 - calculating stored value in table, 1114
 - linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
 - triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109

data entry assistance, 1053–1071

- filling in related data, 1053–1057
- fixing e-mail hyperlink, 1061–1062
- handling NotInList event, 1058–1061
- providing graphical calendar, 1063–1068
- working with linked photos, 1069–1071

data selection, 1082–1097

- filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
- multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
- providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
- selecting from summary list, 1094–1095

data validation, 1071–1080

- checking for overlapping data, 1078–1080
- checks for possible duplicate names, 1071–1073
- maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080
- testing for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
- verifying prerequisite before saving record, 1075–1077

form processes, 561, 562

with macros, 918–938

- Hourglass automatically restored after running, 897
- including subform and subreport references, 920–921
- referencing form and report objects, 919
- referencing properties for forms and reports, 919–920
- tasks using, 887, 888–889
- using references to form and report controls and properties, 920

reports, 1114–1124

- drawing border on, 1118–1121

filtering dynamically on opening, 1121–1124

using up partial page of mailing labels, 1115–1118

AutoNumber data type

- about, 158, 160
- converting, 228
- unavailable for data collection if primary key, 310, 311

AutoNumber fields

- query update limitations for, 469
- using as primary keys, 549

Avery label formats, 754, 1117

Avg function, 437

axis for PivotCharts, 481

B

Back Color property, 647

Back Up Database command, 205

background color for reports, 788–789

Background Compile check box (Options dialog box), 949, 950

background missing on Web page, 1150

backing up

- application data, 1315
- before running delete queries, 510
- data before using update queries, 489
- databases, 205
- tables, 206–207
- text queries, 1526

backslash (\)

- operator precedence for, 367
- rounding numeric expressions with, 365
- used to display character immediately following, 653, 655

backward compatibility with .mdb format, 979

BeforeUpdate events, 931, 937

BEGIN/END statements, 1531, 1532

BETWEEN operator, 169, 360–361

BETWEEN predicate, A35

bigint data type, 1461

Bitmap Image Object submenu, 534

bitmap objects, 535

Blank Database button

- about, 21
- connecting to existing SQL Server database from, 1453
- creating new project from, 1448, 1449
- illustrated, 22

Blank Database icon, 148

Blank Form button, 609

Blank Report button, 790–791

blank reports, 760

Blank.accdb database template

- creating, 196–197
- saving in appropriate template folder, 197–199

blocking harmful content, 35–36

Boolean operators

as selection criteria, 356

truth tables for, A56

using in query designer, A55

Border Style property, 675–676

borders

drawing on report, 1118–1121

setting control, 583–584

setting style properties for form, 675–676

bound combo box properties, 604–605

bound controls, 566

bound forms

editing data on, 884

server filters with forms bound to in-line functions, 1558

bound object frame, 534

brackets ({ })

added to SELECT statements in earlier Access versions, A61

defining list of comparison characters in, A49

delimiting names for SQL Server, 1460, A36

displaying text in color specified, 654, 656

enclosing object names in, 372, 919

including query parameters in, 449

inserted automatically in form control reference, 901

placing around field names, 362

putting object names in, 372

when to enclose names in, 989–990

Break In Class Module check box (Options dialog box), 949

Break On All Errors check box (Options dialog box), 949

Break When Value Changes check box (Add Watch dialog box), 957

Break When Value Is True check box (Add Watch dialog box), 957

breaking design rules, A28–A31

capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31

creating report snapshot data, A31

improving performance of critical tasks, A29

breakpoints. *See also* debugging

cautions using, 957

inserting in code, 951–952

output statements in Immediate window, 954–956

preventing debugging, 1312

browsers. *See* Web browsers

bugs

error message when saving in-line function, 1516

incorrect positioning of fields on form grid, 627

mailto: protocol prefix, 1062

missing background images in Form Wizard, 595, 690

opening properties affecting color from Custom

Properties dialog box, 729

Build button, 172, 729

building simple input forms. *See also* Form Wizard

with design tools, 563–589

adding new query for property, 576–578

creating and setting form dimensions, 563–567

customizing colors and reviewing design, 587–589

dragging fields to form, 578–580

font options for, 582–583

label properties for, 585–586

moving and sizing controls, 580–581

setting and displaying properties of, 586–587

setting object properties, 574–578

setting text box properties, 584–585

specifying record source, 566–567

text box properties for, 584–585

Form Wizard, 593–597

creating basic form, 593–597

modifying basic form, 598–601

quick create commands for, 590–593

built-in views for Windows SharePoint Services, 1173

business rules

ensuring in queries for data integrity, 417–419

verifying prerequisite data to satisfy, 1075–1077

Button Face color, 642

buttons

Add Generated Key, 237

Advanced Filter, 385, 402

Ascending, 385, 402, 409

assigning macros custom images, 30, 31

associating macro with, 923–924

AutoCalc, 475

AutoFilter, 475

AutoFormat, 807–808

Blank Database, 1448, 1449, 1453

Blank Form, 609

Build, 172, 729

Clear All Sorts, 402

Close, 675

Collapse Field/Expand Field, 476

Combo Box, 569

command, 517, 535–536

Controls group, 568–572, 583–584

Datasheet Formatting Dialog Box Launcher, 1145

Datasheet view of, 385

Debug toolbar, 956

defining several at a time from Controls group, 714

Descending, 402, 409

Dialog Box Launcher, 395

disabling

Module and Class Module, 1330

unused, 1283–1284

Discard My Changes, 1232

Export To Excel, 476

- Field List, 476
- Filter, 385, 402
- Font group, 582–583
- Form view, 120
- Formulas, 475
- Group, 642–643
- Group By, 1505
- Hide Details, 476, 477
- Insert SQL, 1530
- Install Now, 1346
- linking to related task with, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
- List Box, 569
- Microsoft Office, 24
- Minimize/Maximize, 108, 109, 675
- More Pages, 124
- Move To SharePoint, 1212
- New Object, 890
- Print Preview Zoom, 124
- Property Sheet, 176, 476
- Query Design, 348, 415
- Query Wizard, 348, 1524
- Refresh Pivot, 476
- Remove, 633
- Retry All My Changes, 1232
- Save, 151
- Set Control Defaults, 680–681
- Set Maximum Record Count, 1548, 1549, 1568
- Set Unique Identifier, 237
- SharePoint List, 1183, 1184, 1187, 1203, 1204
- Show As, 476
- Show Details, 476
- Show Top/Bottom, 475
- Shutter Bar Open/Close, 47
- Sort Descending, 385
- Special Effect, 583, 645–646
- Stop Refresh, 1548, 1568
- Subtotal, 475
- switching views with Maximize/Minimize, 109
- Table Design, 155, 1458
- Tabular, 800–801
- To Grid, 618
- Toggle Filter, 402
- Totals, 435
- Two Pages, 124, 125
- Use Control Wizards, 602
- Views, 110
- Visual Basic Editor window, 945
- Work Online, 1230, 1231
- XML File, 1246
- Zoom, 737, 738

C

calculated values

- in reports, 830–840
 - adding print date and page numbers, 830–833
 - adding values across group, 837–838
 - avoiding #Error in calculated control, 836
 - performing calculations on detail line, 834–837
 - storing in table, 1114

calculating

- data on detail line, 833–837
- grand total using percentages, 840, 843–844
- stored value, 1114
- totals on expressions, 838
- totals and filtering, 441–442

calendar

- ActiveX Calendar control, 729–730
- creating SharePoint list from Access for, 1199–1203
- providing Visual Basic, 1063–1069

Calendar Active X control, 729–730

call stack, 959–960

Call Stack dialog box, 960

Call statement, 1017

callbacks

- creating for Ribbon in VBA, 1296–1297
- Ribbon control, 1288
- RibbonX, 1290–1292

calling

- functions
 - domain, 1057
 - syntax for, 1542
- MsgBox function in macro, 911

candidate keys, A20

Can Grow property, 1119

Caption property

- displaying, 586, 587
- for fields, 377
- renaming fields and changing, 216

captions

- correcting PivotCharts data field, 482
- displaying property for, 586, 587
- setting label properties for form, 585–586, 587

capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31

caret (^)

- arithmetic operator, 365
- operator precedence for, 367
- testing position of characters in project file, A49

Cartesian product

- defined, 414
- queries returning, 498

Cascade Delete Related Fields check box (Edit Relationships dialog box), 184, 185

Cascade Update Related Fields check box (Edit Relationships dialog box), 184, 185

cascading updates/deletes support, 1218

case

- indicating upper- and lowercase characters, 655
- insensitivity of character string comparisons, 170

categories

Access Options dialog box, 87–97

- Add-Ins, 95
- Advanced, 93
- Current Database, 88–89
- Customize, 94
- Datasheet, 90
- Object Designers, 90–91
- Popular, 87–88
- Proofing, 92
- Resources, 96–97
- Trust Center, 96

macro action

- building custom menu and executing menu commands, A112
- controlling display and focus, A113–A114
- displaying messages or beeping, A115
- executing queries, A106–A107
- handling errors, A118
- modifying objects, A115–A117
- opening/closing Access objects, A102–A104
- overview, A101
- printing data, A105–A106
- running another application, A118
- searching for data, A111
- setting values, A109
- testing conditions and controlling action flow, A107–A108
- Trusted column, A101
- using temporary variables, A117

Navigation Options dialog box

- customizing, 58
- display order for, 61
- working with groups in custom, 59–63

Navigation Pane

- displaying single, 81
- hiding custom groups on, 67–69
- Object Type, 61, 82, 105–106, 114, 115
- Tables And Related Views, 49–52
- Unrelated Objects, 51–52
- using custom, 53–55
- viewing categories from submenus, 77

CategoryDescription field, 604–605

cells, setting options in Datasheet Formatting dialog box for, 1146

Change event

- description of, 872
- preventing endless loop with, 873

characters. *See also* placeholder characters; *and Symbols and numbers section*

fill character embedded in format string, 653

formatting

- Date/Time, 658–660
- Number and Currency, 653–654
- Text data type, 655–656

input mask

- list of, 170–171
- listing of, 170–171
- missing, 174
- storing formatting characters with data, 173

using to separate table and field names, 372, 373

valid field name, 159

Visual Basic data-typing, 962

wildcard characters for string comparisons, A49

check boxes. *See also* specific Access check boxes

- about, 526–527
- changing Yes/No field to, 605–607
- graphic image size unchanged in, 615
- option buttons and toggle buttons vs., 606

check constraints

- adding, 1478–1480
- allowing Null values with, 1482
- creating multiple, 1481–1482
- defined, 1477–1478
- deleting, 1480
- maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080

Check Constraints tab (Properties dialog box), 1478

child tables, 185

Choose Builder dialog box, 905, 906

Choose Name dialog box, 1466–1467

chtProductSales form, 538

Class Module button, 1330

class modules, 1009–1016

- defined, 943, 1009
- form and report, 944
- Private statement in, 972–973
- Property Get procedure, 1010–1012
- Property Let procedure, 1012–1014
- Property Set procedure, 1014–1016
- Public statement in, 973–974
- signaling declared events in, 1022–1023
- understanding, 1009–1010
- using Event statement in, 971–972

clean-up code for Contacts.aacdb, 1312–1315

Clear All Sorts button, 402

Clear MacroError action, 916

CLI (Common Language Interface), 254

client computers

- advantages of local copies of applications, 1320
- browsers executing scripts on, 1138
- setting up desktop database for, 1319, 1320–1328

client/server applications

- building, 137–138
- designing data fetching for, 1321
- setting up desktop database for, 1319, 1320–1328

Clipboard

- copying and pasting fields, 222–224
- cutting and moving objects to, 210
- Office vs. Windows, 395
- pasting text into Page Header section, 845

Close Button property, 675

closing

- Access objects with macro, A102
- database and compacting, 251
- events for form and report, 870–871
- property sheets in Design view, 576
- SQL designer, 1530
- windows without Close button, 675

clustered indexes, 1471–1472, 1474

code. *See also* complex Visual Basic code examples

- ASP script generated in VBScript, 1158
- AutoKeys macro, 1316
- book's convention for displaying long lines of, 925
- disabled in databases downloaded to untrusted locations, 1225
- hexidecimal code for color names, A93–A99
- HTML tag coding, 1129–1131
- indenting Visual Basic, 948–949
- sample database exit, 1312–1315
- viewing executed code in Call Stack dialog box, 959–960

Code window (VBE), 945, 946–947

Collapse Field button, 476

collapsing

- fields, 476
- Navigation Pane
 - to desired width, 47
 - group in, 49
 - hides contextual tab, 739
- Ribbon, 45

Collect Data Through E-Mail Messages wizard. *See* collecting data via e-mail

Collecting Data Using E-Mail Options dialog box, 313–315

collecting data via e-mail, 304–345. *See also* HTML forms; InfoPath forms

- about, 304–305
- allowing multiple rows per reply, 314–315

collecting new or updated data, 308–309, 329–330

data types unavailable, 311

e-mail addresses

- finding in associated table, 317–318
- selecting source for, 315–316, 333–334
- selecting table containing, 316–317, 332–333

HTML forms

- filling out, 322–325
- InfoPath forms vs., 327
- selecting recipients for, 320–321
- using, 306–308

Hyperlink data types in, 321

including primary key in data collection, 310

InfoPath forms

- filling out, 337–341
- HTML forms vs., 327
- using, 328–329
- warning messages for, 335–336
- writing message for, 334–335

instructing recipient to click reply, 319

messages

- customizing, 318–319, 334–335
- managing and resending, 343–345
- moving HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
- previewing in Outlook, 321–322
- sending, 336–337, 340–341

replies

- accepting multiple, 314
- date to stop processing, 315
- discarding, 314
- manually processing, 321–322, 341–343
- processing automatically, 312–313, 325–326
- specifying data to collect, 309–310, 330–331
- wizard's summary of process, 320

collections

- about, 978
- Access architecture and, 980
- established by DBEngine object, 983
- QueryDefs, 984
- referencing Forms and Report, 919
- referencing objects within, 987–988
- Report Design Tools, 759, 761
- structure of DAO, 983, 984
- TableDefs, 984
- TempVars, 991, A117

color

- Button Face, 642
- customizing input form, 587–589
- formatting control border, 583–584
- highlighting form items with, 645–646
- names and codes for, A93–A99
- report background, 788–789

color, *continued*

- selecting, A93
- setting
 - 3-D object, 565
 - default datasheet, 1144
 - form grid dot, 564–565
- system, 647

Column Fields drop zone, 474**column headings for crosstab queries, 445–446****Column Width lookup property, 244****Column-Name clause, A35–A37****columns**

- about, 99
- adding labels in simple reports, 770–771
- aligning stacked control layout, 637–638
- attributes stored in, 5
- data types in SQL Server, 1461–1464
- Datasheet view of, 385
- defined, 4
- defining properties for stored procedure, 1523–1524
- moving or deleting, 150
- project
 - adding definitions to, 1465–1467
 - allowing Null values with check constraints, 1482
 - database fields vs., 1458
 - defining, 1459–1465
 - defining as primary key, 1470–1471
 - defining for tables, 1475–1477
 - properties not visible in SQL Server 7.0, 1470
 - properties of SQL Server table, 1467–1470
 - sql_variant data type, 1465
 - user-defined data types, 1465
- selecting query designer, 1499–1450
- SharePoint list
 - about, 1168
 - adding, 1175–1179
 - browser viewing of custom, 1205
 - setting properties for, 1176, 1177
- sizing for combo box, 603
- specifying query options for ordering and sorting, 1503–1504
- SQL Server naming conventions for, 1460

Columns tab (Page Setup dialog box), 558, 753–754**COM add-ins, 95****Combo Box button, 569****Combo Box Wizard, 602, 604–605****combo boxes**

- about, 528
- advantages of using, 601
- allowing for vertical scroll bar in, 244
- associating macro with, 923
- building, 602–605

choosing values resolved with stored procedure parameter, 1564, 1575–1576

conditional formatting of, 716

defined, 240

designing for InfoPath data entry, 337–338

filtering one list with another in, 1095–1097

formatting properties for data display, 651–661

illustrated, 529

keyboard shortcuts for, 543

manually changing text boxes to, 602

retrieving fields from current row of, 1055

sizing columns for, 603

viewing properties created by Combo Box Wizard, 604

watching in Datasheet view, 241–242

width unadjusted with Size To Fit command, 614

comma (,) as thousands separator, 653**command buttons**

- defined, 517
- placing in forms, 535–536, 537

command-line options for application shortcuts, 1333–1334**commands**

- Back Up Database, 205
- Compile, 1317
- control padding, 638–640
- Copy, 207
- Count Values, 804–805
- Cut, 210, 394–395
- Datasheet, 592–593
- executing
 - Access, 1027–1028
 - with DoCmd object, 1005
 - menu commands with macro action, A112
 - from table's shortcut menu, 106–107
 - Visual Basic in Immediate window, 952–953
- ExportXML, 1256
- External Data tab import and export, 1183
- found on Design contextual tab for update queries, 488
- ImportXML, 1256
- Microsoft Office Button, 25–27
- Multiple Items, 592
- New Item, 1169
- Option Button, 714
- Quick Access Toolbar, 27–30
 - adding to from Ribbon, 34
 - inserting separators on, 33
 - revising order on, 32
- quick create
 - forms built with Form Wizard vs., 593
 - input forms, 590–593
 - location on Ribbon, 590
 - Report, 775–777

- RunMacro, 939
- screen resolution and alignment, 611
- ScreenTips for, 104
- SharePoint
 - Create Column, 1176
 - Modify This View, 1176, 1177
- Size To Fit, 612–616
- SQL underlying Access database, A33
- Table Templates, 153–154
- Update Status Bar Text Everywhere ContactID Is Used, 233
- used in SQL data definition queries, 463
- comments, 1528
- COMMIT TRANSACTION statements, 1535
- Common Language Interface (CLI), 254
- compacting databases, 250–251
- companion CD
 - ContactsDataCopy.accdb sample database, 305
 - ContactsSQL.mdf file, 1456
 - database files not digitally signed on, 35
 - sample files
 - modifying table design for, 204
 - on, 23, 103
 - working with project files, 1494–1495
 - TasksEmailCollection.aacdb sample database, 305
 - Visual Basic functions on, 371
- comparison operators
 - Between, In, and Like operators in, 360–361
 - criteria selection with AND and OR, 357–360
- comparison predicate, A37–A38
- comparison values in field validation expressions, 168
- Compatibilities tab (Properties dialog box), 1334
- Compile command, 1317
- Compile On Demand check box (Options dialog box), 949–950
- compiling
 - application before production, 1316–1317
 - errors with procedures within procedures, 947
 - flagging undeclared variables during, 963
 - setting Visual Basic options for, 949–950
 - version of .mdb or .accdb files, 272
- Completing Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1357–1358
- complex data
 - about, 8
 - manipulating data types with DAO, 997–1000
 - Multi-Value Lookup Fields and, 245
- complex queries, 413–483
 - about, 413
 - assigning data types for parameters, 451
 - building query on query, 421–424
 - controlling output of, 452–454
 - creating in Query Wizard, 431–434
 - customizing properties, 452–463
 - data definition queries, 463
 - defining subdatasheets, 458–462
 - designing PivotCharts, 478–483
 - filtering, 440–442
 - including parameters in, 449–452
 - joins
 - inner, 414–421
 - outer, 425–431
 - locking records in, 462
 - protecting data integrity, 413
 - saving results in temporary table, 496
 - setting up for PivotTables, 469–473
 - types of
 - crosstab queries, 442–449
 - pass-through queries, 463
 - totals queries, 435–449
 - union queries, 463–468
 - update limitations for fields in, 468–469
 - working with unique records and values, 454–458
- complex task automation, 1105–1114
 - calculating stored value, 1114
 - linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
 - triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
- complex Visual Basic code examples, 1030–1050
 - examining all error codes, 1044–1050
 - code listing, 1045–1047
 - explanation of code listing, 1047–1050
 - randomly loading data, 1030–1044
 - code listing, 1032–1040
 - explanation of code listing, 1041–1044
- computer requirements for Microsoft Office, 1341
- concatenating
 - desktop database expressions with & character, A40
 - example of concatenated text fields, 363
 - fields or strings with & character, 362, A40
 - Null values in expressions, 364, 420
 - project file expressions with + character, A40
 - text strings, 841–842
- Condition column (Macro window), 891, 921, 922
- conditional expressions
 - macros use of, 900–901
 - using DLookup and IsNull functions in macros, 930–931
- conditional formatting
 - using in forms, 716–719
 - using in reports, 848–851
- Conditional Formatting dialog box, 717, 848
- Configuration Options page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1354, 1355

confirmation dialog boxes

- append query, 507
- confirming deletion, 396
- delete query, 510
- Microsoft Office Genuine Advantage, 145, 146
- pasting, 396
- update query, 489, 491
- verifying rows pasted into new table, 500

Connect dialog box, 1214**Connect property, 297****connections**

- choosing server, 1450–1451, 1454
- security for SQL Server, 1450–1451, 1455
- startup code to verify and correct linked table, 1323–1328

Conrad Systems Contacts sample database. *See* Contacts.accdb database**Const statement, 965****constants**

- declaring with Const statement, 965
- double or single quotation marks enclosing text string, 362
- Visual Basic, 961–978
 - built-in for macro actions, 1028
 - data types supported, 961–963
 - defining scope of, 963–964
 - storing data as, 961

constraint expressions

- adding, 1478–1479
- examples of, 1481–1482
- multiple, 1481

constructing applications, A5**contact events. *See also* events**

- defined, A10

contact labels. *See* mailing labels**contacts, defined, A10****Contacts template, 152****Contacts.accdb database**

- about, A7
- exploring tables in, 133–135
- main switchboard form for, 535–536, 537
- migrating to SQL Server with, 216
- opening project file, 133

Contacts.adp project file

- connecting to database, 1492
- opening, 133
- steps required to work with, 1494–1495

ContactsDataCopy.accdb database, 305**ContactsSQL.mdf file, 1456, 1492****ContactTracking.accdb, 204****content**

- allowing browsers to view blocked, 1245
- blocking harmful, 35–36

- controls sizing form to fit with, 612–616
- disabled in databases downloaded to untrusted locations, 1225

- enabling for databases, 916

- macros and security, 34–35

contextual tabs. *See also* specific tabs

- adding built-in groups to, 1276–1279

Arrange, 564, 618

- creating for custom Ribbon, 1274–1275

Design

- editing relationships from, 184

- illustrated, 122, 564

- query commands on, 488, 509

- running reports from, 121

- disabling unused, 1283–1284

- found on Form Design Tools tab, 567

- hidden when Navigation Pane collapsed, 739

- Print Preview, 739

- report, 761

- Report Design Tools, 121–122, 761

- Ribbon, 41, 104

- setting focus to, 1301–1302

continuation indicator (...), 130**continuous forms**

- building in Form Wizard, 697–698

- example of, 520–521

- showing all fields in, 591–593

Continuous Forms view

- advantages of, 696

- filtering one list with another in, 1095

- viewing subform in, 700–701

Control Alignment group

- aligning control layouts from, 637–638

- snapping items to grid from, 618, 619

control IDs for built-in controls, 1277**Control Layout group, 617, 618****control layout indicator, 599****control layouts**

- advantages of, 626

- converting, 798–800, 801

- illustrated, 599

- moving controls within, 626–630

- removing, 598–599, 632–635, 640–642, 800

- selecting all controls in, 639

- stacked and tabular, 626, 797

control padding commands, 638–640**Control Padding (Control Layout group), 639****control sources, 566****control-of-flow statements**

- Call, 1017

- Do...Loop, 1017–1018

- For...Next, 1018–1019

- For Each...Next, 1019–1020

- GoTo, 1020–1021
- If...Then...Else, 1021–1022
- RaiseEvent, 1022–1023
- Select Case, 1023–1024
- Stop, 1024
- text stored procedures, 1531–1535
- Visual Basic, 1016–1026
- While...Wend, 1025
- With...End, 1025–1026
- controls**
 - ActiveX Calendar, 726–730
 - adjusting
 - Form Wizard, 598–599
 - layout of form, 616–617
 - aligning custom form
 - in Design view, 619–622
 - in Layout view, 625–626
 - anchoring in Layout view, 623–624
 - application's compatibility with ActiveX, 1068
 - applying Windows-themed form, 559, 596, 692
 - arranging in formatted columns, 630–631
 - associating macro with combo box, 923
 - avoiding #Error in calculated, 836
 - bound and unbound, 566
 - changing content with Change event, 873
 - command buttons, 517, 535–536, 537
 - conditional formatting for form, 718
 - control sources, 566
 - copying and pasting embedded macros in, 907
 - counting total events with, 804–807
 - defined, 526
 - defining
 - defaults as AutoFormats, 681
 - responsive Report view, 749–750
 - deleting and attaching labels for, 581
 - dragging to new column, 634–635
 - editing form inside subform, 709
 - embedded macros saved with form or report, 904
 - enabling and locking, 584–585, 662
 - formatting properties for, 651–661
 - Date/Time formats, 657–660
 - displaying Null values, 657
 - numbers and currency, 652
 - text, 655–656
 - Yes/No fields, 660
 - grouping and moving, 642–643
 - inserting page numbers in, 806
 - list and combo boxes, 527–529
 - loading images into custom Ribbon, 1299–1300
 - locking button on form, 573
 - methods for snapping to grid, 618
 - modifying Report Wizard properties, 787, 788
 - moving
 - in Layout view, 118–119
 - one or more horizontally or vertically, 621
 - and sizing, 580–581
 - within control layouts, 626–630
 - option buttons, check boxes, toggle buttons, and option groups, 526–527
 - Partially Enclosed vs. Fully Enclosed selection options, 612
 - placing into control layout, 635–638
 - programming in Report view, 127–128
 - property sheets for, 116–117
 - resizing
 - in Layout view, 631–632
 - report's text box, 797–798
 - and repositioning Report Wizard, 785–787
 - using property sheet, 633
 - Ribbon
 - attributes for, 1288–1289
 - list of, 1290–1292
 - rules for referencing form and report, 920
 - selecting all
 - in control layout, 639
 - in vertical or horizontal area, 588, 600
 - setting
 - borders of, 583–584
 - control padding, 638–640
 - defaults for form, 680–683
 - form tab order, 662–663
 - label properties for, 585–586
 - other properties for, 666–669
 - sizing
 - to fit form content, 612–616
 - subform, 704
 - text box controls for reports, 772–773
 - smart tags added to, 663–665
 - snapping to grid, 617–619
 - tab, 719–723
 - about, 530
 - property settings for, 723
 - setting Page Index property, 721
 - types of, 719
 - working with, 720–722
 - toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
 - validation rules for, 670
- Controls group**
 - border formatting with, 583–584
 - buttons on
 - list of, 568–572
 - Special Effect, 645–646
 - illustrated, 568–572, 761

Controls group, *continued*

- Option Button command, 714
- placing bound controls on form from field list, 573–574

conversion functions, A86–A87**Convert Form's Macros To Visual Basic button, 938–939****converting**

- Access from previous release, 1358–1360
- data types, 226–230
 - action query data conversion errors, 512
 - conversion effects on field contents, 226
 - dBASE-to-Access conversions, 264
 - dealing with conversion errors, 231–232
 - Hyperlink, 229–230
 - limitations on data type conversions, 226–229
 - Paradox-to-Access conversions, 266
 - SQL-to-Access conversions, 270
 - Visual FoxPro-to-Access conversions, 270
- macros to Visual Basic, 938–940
- queries
 - fields discarded going from select to action, 490
 - select to update, 488
- stacked and tabular control layouts, 798–800, 801

coordinates for report border, 1120**Copy command, 207, 394****copying**

- fields, 222–224, 593
- objects with macro action, A115
- and pasting
 - in Datasheet view, 394–396
 - embedded macros, 907

correlated subqueries, A39, A66, A67**Count function, 437****Count Values command, 804–805****counting**

- rows with stored procedures, 1524
- total events with controls, 804–807

Create A New Data Source To SQL Server wizard, 256–258**Create Column command (SharePoint), 1176****Create Database permissions, 1452****Create Digital Certificate dialog box, 1337****Create New Data Source wizard, 256****Create New List wizard**

- creating and naming custom list, 1203–1204
- specifying name for list, 1199–1200

Create Relationship dialog box, 1487**Create tab, 24, 42–43****Create UNIQUE check box (Properties dialog box), 1472, 1473****CROSS JOIN, A43****cross-browser issues, 1131****crosstab queries, 442–449**

- creating, 442–447
- Design view of, 442, 443
- displaying multiple value fields in, 444
- filling empty cells with zero values, 446–447
- function of, 442
- GROUP BY clauses in, A44–A45
- partitioning data in, 447–449
- pivoting with PivotTable vs., 444, 469–470
- Query Wizard for creating, 431
- sample results desired from, 442, 443
- sort order for columns in, 445–446
- specifying column headings for, 445–446
- unable to change data in, 468
- viewing design in Datasheet view, 445

Ctrl key

- intercepting Ctrl+F4 combination with AutoKeys macro, 1315–1316
- noncontiguous selections with, 579, 1082

currency

- formatting characters for, 653–654
- formatting properties for, 652

Currency data type

- about, 158, 160
- converting, 228
- displaying Null values for, 657
- property for, 162, 652

currency fields, 373**Current Database category (Access Options dialog box), 88–89****custom form controls**

- aligning in Design view, 619–622
- aligning in Layout view, 625–626

custom forms. *See* customizing, forms**custom groups. *See also* groups**

- creating object shortcuts in, 63–67
- dragging and dropping objects into, 66
- hiding, 67–69
- modifying in custom categories, 59–63
- renaming, 59, 60
- working with, 53–55

Custom Properties dialog box, 729**custom query by form, 1086–1093****Customer Experience Improvement Program, 19, 20****Customize AutoFormat dialog box, 681****Customize category (Access Options dialog box), 28–29, 94****Customize install option**

- first-time installations with, 1343–1345
- upgrading with, 1348

customizing. *See also* custom groups

- categories for Navigation Pane, 53–55

- forms, 609–683
 - adding fields, 610–611
 - adjusting control layout, 616–617
 - colors and special effects for, 645–646
 - completing form design, 640–642
 - control anchoring, 623–624
 - control padding, 638–640
 - creating blank form, 609
 - defining tab order, 662–663
 - dragging and dropping field in Layout view, 623–624
 - enabling and locking controls, 584–585, 662
 - fonts, 648–650
 - formatting column of controls, 630–631
 - formatting properties, 651–661
 - Layout view's advantages for, 623, 642
 - lines and rectangles, 642–645
 - lining up controls, 619–622, 625–626
 - moving controls within control layout, 626–630
 - placing controls into control layout, 635–638
 - properties controlling appearance, 670–680
 - removing control layout, 632–635, 640–642
 - scroll bar, 661
 - setting control validation rules, 670
 - setting form and control defaults, 680–683
 - sizing controls to fit content, 612–616
 - sizing window to fit form, 622
 - snapping controls to grid, 617–619
 - property sheets, 116–117
 - query properties, 452–463
 - Quick Access Toolbar, 28–29
 - Ribbon, 1266–1279
 - adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
 - building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
 - creating USysRibbons table, 1266–1269
 - creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297
 - customizing tabs, 1274–1275
 - disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
 - displaying errors, 1274
 - dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
 - explanation of XML code listing, 1294–1296
 - hiding existing elements, 1271–1272
 - hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
 - loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
 - loading into Access data projects, 1286
 - loading XML for, 1284–1287
 - setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
 - testing, 1270, 1272–1273
 - using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296
 - XML code listing for, 1292–1294
 - Cut command, 210, 394–395
 - cutting
 - changing row sequence by sorting or, 396
 - and moving data, 210, 394–395
 - Cycle property, 726, 1080
- D**
- DAO. *See* Data Access Objects (DAO)
 - DAP (data access page) support, 14, 100
 - data. *See also* collecting data via e-mail; data selection; validating data
 - attachment controls for storing complex, 530–533
 - changing
 - attributes of, 225–233
 - and deleting form, 550–551
 - editing in SharePoint lists, 1168–1172
 - maximum length of, 230–231
 - conversion errors in, 231–232
 - creating book's sample, 1030–1044
 - defined, A10
 - deleting inactive, 510–511
 - duplicate name checking for, 1071–1073
 - effect of Format and Decimal Places properties on
 - underlying table, 654
 - entering in first table, 149–151
 - event properties for changing, 871–873
 - events when editing form, 884
 - exporting, A79–A83
 - to another Access database, A79–A80
 - to ODBC database, A82–A83
 - to SharePoint Services, 1182–1186
 - to spreadsheet or dBASE or Paradox file, A80
 - to text file, A81
 - to Word mail merge document, A81–A82
 - fetching
 - for client/server applications, 1321
 - on dynamic Web pages with ASP, 1158
 - recordsets, 1548
 - field independence of, A24–A26
 - filtering
 - in PivotTables, 470
 - in Report view, 747–748
 - result of search, 405–412
 - table, 178
 - fixing errors in imported spreadsheet, 280–282
 - formatting properties for, 652–661
 - identifying for new database, A5
 - input masks for
 - defining, 170–174
 - limitations of, 174
 - storing input mask formatting characters, 173
 - inserting from another table, 502–507
 - interacting with report, 745–750

data, *continued*

- keyboard shortcuts for datasheet entry, 391
 - macro actions printing, A105–A106
 - manipulating in RDBMS, 9–11
 - modifying in forms, 119–120
 - moving to database software, 15–17
 - normalizing for joined tables, 414
 - organizing before constructing applications, A5
 - partitioning, 447–449
 - recordset, 686
 - replacing in Datasheet view, 394
 - searching for
 - and filtering, 405–412
 - macro actions, A111
 - selecting
 - and changing in Datasheet view, 393
 - layout choices in Form Wizard, 697
 - to perform tasks, A11
 - query data from single table, 349–351
 - sharing
 - and controlling in Access, 12–13
 - with SharePoint Services, 1161–1163
 - simplifying input, 601–607
 - toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
 - using combo and list boxes, 601–605
 - smart tag use incompatible with, 664
 - sorting in Datasheet view, 401–405
 - specifying for collection via e-mail, 309–310, 330–331
 - types of invalid, 928–929
 - validating with macros, 928–934
 - viewing queries in various ways, 10–11
- Data Access Objects (DAO), 981–985**
- collections in, 983, 984
 - commonalities between ADODB and ADOX models and, 987
 - DBEngine object, 979, 982–984
 - FindFirst method for locating rows in form recordset, 1104
 - manipulating complex data types, 997–1000
 - status of technology, 981–982
 - working with DAO recordsets, 994–997
- data access page (DAP) support, 14, 100**
- data analysis, A13–A16**
- choosing database subjects, A13–A16
 - mapping subjects to database, A16
- data collection messages**
- customizing, 318–319, 334–335
 - data conversion error, 232
 - generating field error, 168
 - managing and resending data collection, 343–345
 - moving to Outlook Inbox, 325
 - previewing in Outlook, 321–322

- security warnings, 24, 25
- sending, 336–337, 340–341
- warnings
 - for field definition deletions, 225
 - for reserved words or function names, 159
- writing for InfoPath forms, 334–335

data control

- data sharing and, 12–13
- defined, 6

data definition

- Access, 6–9
- defined, 5

data definition queries, 463**data documents (.xml)**

- about, 1237
- embedding schema and presentation information in, 1237
- example of, 1238–1239

data entry

- automating, 1053–1071
 - filling in related data, 1053–1057
 - fixing e-mail hyperlink, 1061–1062
 - handling NotInList event, 1058–1061
 - providing graphical calendar, 1063–1068
 - working with linked photos, 1069–1071
- designing forms for, 518
- matching closest entry when typing, 605

Data Entry mode, 543–544, 545**data integrity**

- ensuring business rules in queries for, 417–419
- maintaining application's, 413
- presetting field values to ensure, 935–938

Data Link Properties dialog box, 1454–1457

- attaching database files to server, 1455
- selecting file as database name, 1456
- specifying connections, 1454
- using Windows NT Integrated Security, 1454, 1455

data manipulation

- Access and, 9–11
- defined, 5

data selection

- automating in Visual Basic, 1082–1097
 - filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
 - multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
 - providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
 - selecting from summary list, 1094–1095
- criteria for selection
 - avoiding keywords as, 356
 - Boolean operators as, 356
 - building date/time, 356–357
 - common mistakes using compound, 359
 - entering for queries, 355–356
- filtering, 407–408

- noncontiguous
 - deselecting fields, 579
 - holding down Ctrl key for, 579, 1082
 - selecting multiple noncontiguous files in list box, 1082–1086
- providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
- selecting
 - all controls in control layout, 639
 - all controls in vertical or horizontal area, 588, 600
 - data to perform tasks, A11
 - multiple fields, 579
- working with multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
- data sources**
 - creating, 255–259
 - importing into new SharePoint table, 1187–1188
 - linking SharePoint list to Access, 1191–1195
 - read permission for secured, 273
 - record sources
 - binding to table, 609–610
 - building multiple-table query to serve as, 686–688
 - choosing query used as report's, 1572
 - creating query on form property's, 576–578
 - defined, 566
 - in-line functions as report, 1513
 - selecting report's, 791–792
 - specifying, 566–567
 - subquery providing search criteria from underlying, 1093
 - using field in calculations from specified report, 834
 - selecting for importing to Access, 267–268
 - unable to connect to database with multiple, 302
 - Windows SharePoint Services site as database, 1207
- Data tab (Export XML dialog box), 1247–1248, 1251
- Data tab (property sheet), 575
- Data Type list box, 109
- data types.** *See also specific data types*
 - assigning for query parameters, 451
 - chart of Access and SQL parameter, A53
 - converting, 226–230
 - action query data conversion errors, 512
 - conversion effects on field contents, 226
 - dBASE-to-Access conversions, 264
 - dealing with conversion errors, 231–232
 - Hyperlink, 229–230
 - limitations on data type conversions, 226–229
 - Paradox-to-Access conversions, 266
 - SQL-to-Access conversions, 270
 - Visual FoxPro-to-Access conversions, 270
 - determining spreadsheet, 274–275
 - disadvantages of Lookup Wizard, 245
 - field, 157–161
 - formatting characters for Text, 655–656
 - formatting Yes/No, 660
 - grouping specifications and, 765
 - limitations on conversions, 226–229
 - manipulating complex DAO, 997–1000
 - naming Visual Basic variables with prefix of, 966
 - selecting SQL Server, 1459
 - SQL Server column, 1461–1464
 - sql_variant, 1465
 - supported in Visual Basic, 961–963
 - unable to change for fields joining tables, 204
 - unavailable for e-mail data collection, 311
 - unavailable in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
 - user-defined, 1465
 - viewing database's valid, 108–109
- database design concepts, A16–A28**
 - about, A16–A17
 - developing efficient relationships, A27–A28
 - creating linking tables, A28
 - foreign keys, A27
 - one-to-many and one-to-one relationships, A28
- normalization, A19–A27
 - field independence, A24–A26
 - field uniqueness, A19–A20
 - four rules of table design, A27
 - functional dependence, A21–A23
 - unique identifier or primary key, A20–A21
- waste in single table design, A17–A19
- when to break design rules, A28–A31
 - capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31
 - creating report snapshot data, A31
 - improving performance of critical tasks, A29
- database diagrams, 1485–1488**
- Database Documenter, 199–200**
- database management systems (DBMS), 1159, 1160**
- database objects, 49, 50**
- Database Splitter wizard, 1320–1323**
- database subjects**
 - choosing, A13–A16
 - mapping to database, A16
- Database Tools tab, 24, 44–45**
- Database window.** *See* Navigation Pane
- databases, 102–132. *See also* database design concepts; tables**
 - AutoCorrect options for, 193
 - backing up tables or full, 205–207
 - capabilities of RDBMS, 5–6
 - checking version of, 1327
 - compacting, 250–251
 - created in Datasheet view, 148–149
 - creating
 - data source as link to ODBC, 255–259
 - empty, 147–149
 - tables for, 151–156

databases, *continued*

- customizing Quick Access Toolbar commands for, 28–29
- data modifications in Form view, 119–120
- data vs. information in designing, A10
- DBEngine object in, 979, 982–984
- defined, 4, 99
- defining
 - fields, 156–157
 - form in Design view, 114–117
- delivering dynamic query results on Web page, 1158–1160
- displaying list of tables, 105–106
- distributing execute-only, 1329–1330
- enabling untrusted, 35–36
- encrypting with password, 1334–1336
- entering data in first tables, 149–151
- establishing variable pointing to current, 989
- exit code for Contacts.aacdb, 1312–1315
- exporting data
 - to another Access, A79–A80
 - to ODBC, A82–A83
 - as static HTML file, 1140–1143
- formats compatible with Access, 9
- four-digit year format for individual or all, 192, 1489
- guidelines for enabling content, 916
- importing
 - Access object from other Access, 271–273
 - and linking data to, 253
 - source data into new tables in, 276
- improved reliability of Visual Basic project, 950
- limitations of, 201
- linking
 - data to, 253
 - dBASE and Paradox files to Access, 298–299
 - tables with other Access, 295–298
- listing queries by object type, 110–111
- loading reference to Access Database Engine Object Library in, 981
- macros
 - defining multiple actions for, 129–130, 895–897
 - working with in, 128–130
- migrating to SharePoint
 - about, 1207–1208
 - opening database from SharePoint, 1223–1226
 - publishing vs., 1207
 - republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
 - steps to move database, 1212–1219
 - ways SharePoint handles migrated data, 1218–1219
 - working online with migrated data, 1217
- modules in, 130–132

- opening, 102–103
 - existing, 22–25
- options for extending Access, 137–138
- packaging and signing, 1336–1339
- printing table definitions for, 199–200
- project
 - building new SQL Server, 1448–1451
 - connecting to existing SQL Server, 1452–1457
 - defining table relationships in database diagrams, 1485–1488
 - errors creating, 1452
 - naming conventions for SQL Server, 1451
 - projects vs. databases, 1450
- publishing to SharePoint site, 1208–1211
 - about, 1208
 - .accdb file format required, 1210
 - downloading SharePoint databases to trusted locations, 1225
 - moving vs., 1207
 - publishing changes to migrated database, 1217
 - republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
 - selecting and publishing file, 1210–1211
- randomly loading data to sample, 1030–1032
- read-only, 1224
- reasons for modifying, 203–204
- relational, 4–5
- reports
 - changing definitions of, 121–124
 - function of for, 120–121
 - interactive Report view for, 127–128
 - previewing before printing, 124–125
 - viewing in Layout view, 125–127
- resolving changes in shared, 1231
- role of forms in, 114
- running
 - Performance Analyzer on, 1302–1303
 - queries in Datasheet view, 113–114
- saving changes to, 205
- selecting
 - Layout view for forms, 118–119
 - SQL Server, 1451
- setting options in VBE, 198
- spreadsheet or text files linked to Access, 300–301
- SQL tables linked to Access, 301–302
- startup properties for, 1310–1312
- synchronizing after offline changes, 1230–1233
- templates
 - customizing default, 195–199
 - selecting, 143–145
 - using to create, 142–147
- testing in runtime mode, 1329

using Design view with, 107–108

viewing

module objects in, 942–943

navigation objects in groups, 105

wildcard characters for string comparisons, A49

working offline, 1226–1229

data-driven design, A7

Datasheet category (Access Options dialog box), 90

Datasheet command, 592–593

Datasheet Formatting dialog box, 1146

Datasheet Formatting Dialog Box Launcher button, 1145

Datasheet view

adding records in, 391

buttons in, 385

copying and pasting data in, 394–396

creating and customizing Windows SharePoint

Services, 1173–1175

database created in, 148–149

deleting rows in, 396

expressions viewed in, 363, 368

extra table rows in, 111

forms

detecting filters applied to, 876

setting datasheet format for, 1145

hyperlinks

editing, 400–401

working with in, 397–400

keyboard shortcuts in, 386, 391

navigation buttons for records, 386

preventing design changes in applications, 1311

properties for trapped keyboard and mouse events,
876–878

queries

setting datasheet format for, 1145

working with, 384–412

record indicators in, 390

replacing data in, 394

reports, detecting filters applied to, 876

selecting and changing data in, 393

SharePoint

modifying layout in, 1178

similarity between lists and tables in, 1169

sorting data in, 401–405

subforms

defining subdatasheet, 710–713

sizing controls in, 704

using in, 701

viewing, 539, 541

switching to other view

Design view, 109

PivotChart view, 479

tables, setting datasheet format for, 1145

viewing

combo box in, 241–242

crosstab query design in, 445

query field's properties in, 354

query results run in, 113–114

tables in, 109–110

union queries in, 465

datasheets. *See also* subdatasheets

adding records, 391

copying and pasting data in, 394–396

creating quick table, 592–593

deleting rows in, 396

editing

hyperlinks in, 400–401

individual, 1146

making changes affecting all, 1143–1144

expanding subdatasheets, 387–390, 461

exporting to HTML with formatting, 1146–1148

filtering sections of, 407–408

modifying keyboard options for, 392–393

navigating in records, 386

preventing data modification directly on, 413

record indicators on, 390

replacing data in, 394

selecting and changing data in, 393

data-typing characters, defining variable's data type with,
962

date. *See also* Date/Time data type

adding print date to reports, 830–832

checking for overlapping, 1078–1080

date/time field, 1063

defining query parameters relative to current, 495

deleting rows using date query parameter, 507–510

excluding query requests by, 1109

filtering records for append query by, 503–504

formats for, 508

four-digit year values, 191–192, 651, 1489

functions

Date, 503, 830–831

DateDiff, 365–368, 373

time and date, 375–376, A87

limiting records with custom range of, 812–813

predefined date filters, 408–410

querying across date spans, 428

using in selection criteria, 356–357

validation rules set by, 670

years supported in SharePoint, 128

Date And Time dialog box, 832

Date function, 503, 830–831

Date Picker, 727

Date/Time data type

- about, 158
- contents of, 160
- converting, 229
- displaying Null values for, 657
- field property for, 162
- Format property settings for, 657–658
- formatting characters for, 658–660
- report grouping options for, 818

date/time field, 1063**date/time functions, A87****DateDiff function**

- building expression with, 366–368
- interval settings for, 365–366
- multiplying integer with currency fields, 373

DatePart function, 365**dBASE files**

- exporting Access data to, A80
- importing, 260–264
- linking to Access databases, 293, 298–299

DBEngine object, 979, 982–984**DBMS (database management system), 1159, 1160****Debug toolbar, 951, 952, 956****debugging**

- macros, 890
- Visual Basic, 951–960
 - call stack, 959–960
 - preventing, 1312, 1328
 - setting breakpoints, 951–952, 957
 - using Immediate window, 952–956
 - working with Watch window, 956–959, 960

Decimal Places property, 654**decimals (.)**

- indicating numbers and currency, 653
- using decimal fields in SharePoint Services, 1219

DECLARE statements, 1531**declaring**

- functions, 1006–1007
- parameters
 - to filter in-line functions, 1515, 1516
 - in parameter queries, A52–A54
- subroutines, 1007–1009
- variables and constants
 - Const statement, 965
 - Dim statement, 966–969
 - Enum statement, 969–970
 - Event statement, 971–972
 - Private statement, 972–973
 - public, 963–964
 - Public statement, 973–974
 - ReDim statement, 974–975
 - Static statement, 975–976
 - Type statement, 977–978

Default Max Records property, 1550, 1555–1557**Default View property, defining for reports, 746****defaults**

- changing for Output All Fields property, 452–453
- creating custom templates for, 195–199
- ensuring unique company and contact, 1077–1078
- overriding field name, 377
- placeholder character, 171
- record locking settings for linked data, 294, 295
- restoring Quick Access Toolbar, 33
- setting form and control, 680–683
 - changing with Set Control Defaults button, 680–681
 - defining AutoFormatting for control, 681
 - defining template form, 682–683
- Unique Records property, 456–457

delete queries

- about, 485
- backing up before running, 510
- command on Design contextual tab for, 488
- confirming actions of, 510
- defined, 485
- deleting inactive data with, 510–511
- icon for, 490
- testing rows affected by, 507–510
- using, 510

DELETE statement, A72–A73**deleting. *See also* delete queries**

- check constraints, 1480
- columns, 150
- control labels, 581
- embedded macros, 906–907
- field definitions, 225
- fields, 225
- form data, 550–551
- form properties controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
- image path for photograph, 1070–1071
- inactive data, 510–511
- lists in SharePoint, 1198
- message box confirming, 396
- objects with macro action, A115
- records
 - in InfoPath form, 340
 - testing code for related records when, 1074–1075
- relationships between tables, 210
- rows
 - in ADO keyset, 1004
 - by date, 451, 507–510
 - in datasheets, 396
- tables, 209–210
- temporary variables, 909–910
- watched items, 960

delimited text files

- about, 282
- setting up data for, 283–284
- tab field delimiter for, 288

dependencies

- AutoCorrect options for names of, 192–193
- checking object, 207–209

Descending button, 402, 409**descending sort order, 378****Description property for fields, 156****deselecting noncontiguous fields, 579****Design contextual tab**

- editing relationships from, 184
- illustrated, 122, 564
- Query Type group on, 488, 509
- running reports from, 121

design grid of Query window

- dragging and dropping fields into, 352
- illustrated, 349

design strategies for applications, A7–A13

- analyzing tasks, A7–A10
- organizing tasks, A11–A13
- selecting data to perform tasks, A11
- types of, A7

Design tab**Form Design Tools**

- Controls group buttons, 568–572, 583–584, 645–646
- Font group buttons, 582–583, 761

Design view

- aligning and sizing controls, 609–622
- adjusting layout of form controls, 616–617, 626–627
- aligning form labels, 619–621
- Layout view vs., 623, 642
- lining up controls, 619–622
- sizing controls to fit content, 612–616, 631
- snapping controls to grid, 617–619
- bigint data type unsupported in, 1461
- event properties unavailable for, 871, 873, 875, 876, 878
- field properties on General tab of, 161–165
- forms
 - designing structure of, 114–117
 - polishing subform design, 698–700
 - preventing users from opening in, 671
- moving between parts of window, 222
- opening and closing property sheet in, 576
- project tables
 - creating in, 1457–1459
 - defining relationships for, 1482–1485
 - wizards for .accdb applications unavailable, 1457
- queries opened in, 112–113, 349, 351
- reports
 - changing report definition in, 121–124

contextual tabs for, 121–122**opening subreport, 742****using Layout vs. Design view, 125–127****viewing page number controls in, 806****showing all columns for SharePoint lists, 1206****switching view****to Datasheet, 109****to PivotChart, 479****tables****creating in, 155–156****defining validation rules for, 176****modifying query table design, 501–502****reviewing in, 107–108****designing. *See also* advanced form design; advanced report design****application prototype, A5****database applications, A3–A31****charting task flow, A4****constructing application, A5****data analysis, A13–A16****database design concepts, A16–A28****designing prototype and user interface, A5****identifying data elements, A5****identifying tasks, A4****organizing data, A5****overview, A3–A4, A6****process-driven and data-driven design, A7****rationale of order-entry examples in, A8****strategies for, A7–A13****testing, reviewing, and refining, A6****understanding work process, A4****when to break design rules, A28–A31****reviewing input form in Form view, 589****subreports, 855–857****switchboard forms, 1306–1310****tables, 142****integrity checks in table design, 413****normalizing data, 414****PivotTables, 473–478****setting design options in Access Options dialog box, 191–195****storing calculated value in table, 1114****using query designer, 415****desktop databases. *See* .accdb files; applications; databases****desktop shortcuts to Access application, 1331–1334****Detail Fields drop zone, 474****Detail section****form****about, 518–519****grid dots in, 564–565****selecting width and height, 566**

Detail section, *continued*

report

- embedding PivotChart in, 861–863
- expression values used with conditional formatting, 849
- illustrated, 740
- numbering lines in, 846–848
- performing calculations on, 834–837

Details view (Navigation Pane), 77

diagram pane (query designer)

- adding columns to, 1499–1450
- working in, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503

Diagram window

- adding table to, 1485–1486
- defining relationship between tables in, 1487–1488
- saving diagram, 1488
- viewing project table relationships in, 1486

Dialog Box Launcher button (Office Clipboard task pane), 395

dialog boxes. *See* confirmation dialog boxes; *and specific Access dialog boxes*

digital certificates

- packaging signed database with, 1337
- purchasing, 1336
- self-signing, 1337

digital signatures

- about digitally signed files, 1336
- omitted from sample databases, 35
- responding to security notice about, 1338–1339
- signing .accdb files, 1338

Dim statement, 966–969

disabling

- Layout view, 1304
- Message Bar, 38
- Microsoft Office Genuine Advantage confirmation dialog box, 145
- Minimize or Maximize button, 675
- Module and Class Module button, 1330
- single stepping through macros, 895
- special keys, 1312
- unused Ribbon tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
- Windows Vista's User Account Control, 197
- warning smart tags, 771

Discard My Changes button, 1232

discarding e-mail replies, 314

display labels for PivotCharts, 482–483

displaying

- all table fields in field list, 563–564
- Caption property, 586, 587
- complex information in embedded subforms, 1577
- custom Ribbon errors, 1274
- document tabs, 85–86

file name extensions, 102

form properties, 586–587

function queries, 1525

HTML behind Web page, 1128

list of database tables, 105–106

list of queries by object type, 110–111

long lines of code, 925

Macro Name and Condition columns in Macro window, 891, 922

messages or beeping, A115

multiple-value fields in crosstab queries, 444

Navigation Pane

custom group names, 62–63

single category, 81

system objects and system tables, 1267

Null values, 657

object shortcuts, 72–75

ScreenTips, 104

SQL pane of query designer, 1498

subdatasheet properties, 388

text in color specified, 654, 656

USysRibbons table, 1266–1267

values in option group, 714–716

Visual Basic Editor modules, 131–132

DISTINCTROW clauses, A34, A58–A59, A65

distributing applications, 1319–1340

creating application shortcut, 1331–1334

encrypting database with password, 1334–1336

execute-only databases, 1329–1330

packaging and signing database, 1336–1339

understanding runtime mode execution, 1328–1329

using linked tables, 1320–1328

splitting tables with Database Splitter wizard, 1320–1323

verifying and correcting linked table connections, 1323–1328

DLookup function, 930–931

Do...Loop statement, 1017–1018

Dockable property, 946

Docking tab (Options dialog box), 950

DoCmd object

about, 979, 980, 1026–1027

executing commands with, 1005

executing macro actions with, 890

document libraries, 1214

Document Lists of Control IDs, 1270–1271

Document Management Server, 1209

Document Window Options section (Access Options dialog box), 84–85, 89

Docmter dialog box, 199–200

documents

displaying or hiding tabs for, 85–86

- errors adding Quick Access Toolbar macros for all, 30
- exporting data to Word mail merge, A81–A82
- options for overlapping or tabbed views, 109
- presentation
 - about, 1237, 1241–1243
 - Report ML version of, 1250, 1252
- presentation layout extension, 1237, 1243
- schema, 1237, 1239–1241
- static HTML, 1140–1158
 - customizing appearance of Datasheet view for, 1143–1148
 - designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151
 - exporting database as HTML file, 1140–1143
- user interface for single or multiple, 83–86
- .xml data
 - about, 1237
 - embedding schema and presentation information in, 1237
 - example of, 1238–1239
- dollar sign (\$), 653, 655
- domain functions in Access, 1057
- DoReport macro, 914–915
- DoReport macro group, 898
- double arrow mouse pointer, 580, 581
- double hyphens (--), 1528
- double left arrow (<<) button, 593
- double quotation marks (")
 - added to single text values, 355
 - embedding text with, 653, 655
 - placing delimited object names in, 1460
 - string constants with, 362
- double right arrow (>>) button, 593
- downloading
 - Access 2007 Developer Extensions and Runtime, 1340
 - databases to trusted location, 1225
 - online templates, 145–147
 - SharePoint database in Internet Explorer, 1224
 - SQL Server 2005 Express Edition, 133, 1350, 1494
 - SQL Server Books Online*, 1460, 1533
 - Visual Basic 2005 Express Edition, 1261
 - Visual FoxPro ODBC driver, 269
- Drag-And-Drop Text Editing check box (Options dialog box), 948
- dragging and dropping
 - controls to new column in Layout view, 634–635
- fields
 - into Query window, 352
 - to simple input form, 578–580
- objects into custom groups, 66
- drawing
 - border on report, 1118–1121
 - straight lines while holding down Shift key, 643

- drivers required to import Visual FoxPro data, 269
- drop zones for PivotTable design window, 475, 476
- duplicates
 - AutoNumber and potential for, 549
 - checking
 - keyboard shortcuts for, 1305–1306
 - report text boxes and fields for names, 836
 - Visual Basic names for, 1071–1073
 - eliminating duplicate lookup values, 238
 - ignoring duplicate key for unique indexes, 1474
 - primary keys, 512
- dynamic fields unsupported in SharePoint Services, 1219
- dynamic Web pages
 - delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160
 - processing live data with HTML forms, 1160
 - using ASP for fetching data on, 1158
- dynaset recordsets, 996

E

- E+/e+, 654
- E-/e-, 654
- Edit Datasheet View page (SharePoint), 1178
- Edit Hyperlink dialog box, 399
- Edit mode for forms, 541
- Edit Relationships dialog box
 - check boxes in, 184, 185
 - creating relationship on multiple fields, 186–187
- Edit Switchboard Item dialog box, 1308, 1309
- Edit Switchboard Page dialog box, 1308, 1309
- editing
 - data in SharePoint lists, 1168–1172
 - embedded macros, 902–904
 - fields on one side of inner join, 419
 - form properties controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
 - forms
 - data on, 517, 550–551, 884
 - in Form view, 119–120
 - inside subform control, 709
 - sequence of events in, 882–885
 - HTML, 1134–1135
 - hyperlinks, 400–401, 547–548
 - image control contents, 534
 - queries
 - in Datasheet view, 393
 - in SQL view, 463–468
 - relationships from Design contextual tab, 184
 - tables in SQL Server, 134–135
 - XML USysRibbons table, 1269
- Editor Format tab (Options dialog box), 949
- Editor tab (Options dialog box), 948–949

elements

- defined, 1131
- dynamically updating Ribbon, 1297–1299
- hiding existing Ribbon, 1271–1272
- identifying data, A5

e-mail. *See also* collecting data via e-mail; processing**e-mail replies**

- compatible software for, 1341
- fixing hyperlink, 1061–1062
- moving HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
- processing replies automatically, 312–313, 325–326
- sending data collection messages, 336–337, 340–341

embedded macros, 901–907

- copying and pasting, 907
- creating, 904–906
- deleting, 906–907
- editing, 902–904
- incompatible with .mdb databases, 907
- listed on property sheet, 902
- removed when converting to Visual Basic, 939
- saved with form or report control, 904

embedded PivotCharts

- in form, 730, 733–734
- in report, 861–863

embedded spaces in names, 159, 216**embedded subforms, 523, 692–713**

- creating, 703–706
- defining subdatasheet subform, 710–713
- designing innermost first, 696–701
- displaying complex information with, 1577
- editing controls in inner forms, 709
- main form
 - creating, 707–710
 - designating as source, 706–707
- setting up first-level subform, 701–702
- sizing controls in Form view, 704
- specifying query data source for, 693–696
- uses for, 692–693

embedded subreports

- creating and embedding, 741–744, 851–859
- using in Access projects, 1577

embedded text, 653**Enable Layout View For This Database check box (Access Options dialog box), 671****Enabled property for controls, 584–585, 662****enabling**

- Choose Builder dialog box, 906
- content
 - by defining trusted locations, 39–40
 - for databases, 916
- controls, 584–585, 662
- Layout view for database, 671

Message Bar, 38

- single stepping through macros, 894
- Snap To Grid, 617, 618
- untrusted database, 35–36

encoding options for exported text, 1248, 1249**encrypting database with password, 1334–1336****End Function statement, 1007****End Sub statement, 1008****Enforce Referential Integrity check box (Edit Relationships dialog box), 184, 185****Enforce Relationship for INSERTs and UPDATEs check box (Properties dialog box), 1483, 1484****Enforce Relationship for Replication check box (Properties dialog box), 1483, 1484****Enter key, 392****Enter Parameter Value dialog box, 451, 508, 1516, 1562, 1564****Enum statement, 969–970****equal joins, 1503, A42****equal sign (=)**

- entering expressions after, 763
- equals comparison, 168, 169
- indicating equal joins, A42

equi-join queries. *See* inner joins**EQV operator**

- expressing in query designer, A55
- truth tables for, A56

#Error in calculated controls, 836**error messages**

- action query, 513–514
- generating field, 168
- missing switchboard for database, 1307
- providing for overlapping data, 1078–1080

error trapping, 910–915

- Access Failed dialog box and, 912–913
- clearing MacroError object after, 916, A118
- macro, 890
- macro actions for
 - about, A118
 - OnError action, 911, 914, 915, A118
- process using, 913–915
- Visual Basic
 - code listing, 1045–1050
 - On Error statements in, 1028–1030
 - setting options for, 949

Error And Usage Report Settings page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1354, 1355**errors. *See also* error trapping; troubleshooting**

- adding macros for all documents with Quick Access Toolbar, 30
- authenticating SQL Server 2005 Express Edition with Windows Vista, 258

- checking logged application, 1315
- data conversion, 231–232
- displaying custom Ribbon, 1274
- event properties for trapping, 882
- examining all Visual Basic error codes, 1044–1050
- fixing
 - imported spreadsheet, 280–282
 - imported text file, 290
- generating with misapplied smart tags, 664
- linking data, 301
- opening linked tables, 1327
- troubleshooting action query, 512–514
- ErrorTrapExample macro**, 910–911
- Esc key**, 740
- Event statement**, 971–972
- event-driven applications, 867–869. *See also* events
- events, 867–885
 - about, 869
 - building applications from, 868–869
 - counting totals for, 804–807
 - defining Report view controls responsive to, 749–750
 - NotInList, 931, 1058–1061
 - opening and synchronizing pop-up form, 1101–1104
 - PivotChart form, 730
 - properties for
 - changing data, 871–873
 - detecting focus changes, 874–875
 - detecting form and report filtering, 876
 - detecting PivotTable and PivotChart changes, 870, 878–880
 - detecting timer expiration, 882
 - names of, 870
 - opening and closing forms and reports, 870–871
 - printing, 881
 - trapping errors, 882
 - relationship to other Access objects, 101
 - sequence in form editing, 882–885
 - triggering task from related, 1105–1109
 - validating data with BeforeUpdate and AfterUpdate, 931, 936–937
 - Windows, 867–868
- Events template**, 152, 153
- Excel**. *See also* spreadsheets
 - exporting PivotTable to, 476
 - linking spreadsheet data from, 300–301
 - PivotTables in, 470
 - using first row of spreadsheet as field names, 274
- Exchange**, 1341
- Exchange Server 2000**, 1342
- exclamation mark (!)**
 - forcing left alignment, 653, 655
 - not trusted macro actions marked with, 918
 - preceding object name with, 989–990
 - separating table and field names with, 372, 373
- exclusive mode for database**, 1334–1335
- execute-only applications**
 - distributing databases as, 1329–1330
 - preventing users switching to Design view for, 671
 - property settings for, 1310–1312
 - runtime mode and, 1328–1329
- executing**
 - Access commands, 1027–1028
 - macro actions, 1026–1027
 - queries with macro actions, A106–A107
 - Stop statement suspending execution, 1024
 - Visual Basic commands in Immediate window, 952–953
- EXISTS predicate**, A38–A39
- exit code for Contacts.accdb database**, 1312–1315
- Exit Function statement**, 1007
- Exit Sub statement**, 1008
- Expand Field button**, 476
- expanding**
 - fields, 476
 - Navigation Pane, 47
 - subdatasheets, 387–390, 461
- Export - HTML Document dialog box**
 - check boxes in, 1142
 - exporting reports with formatting, 1152–1153, 1154
 - preserving data formatting, 1146–1147
- Export - SharePoint Site wizard**, 1183–1186
- Export - XML File wizard**, 1246
- Export Data To Microsoft Access dialog box**, 341, 342
- Export To Excel button**, 476
- Export XML dialog box**
 - basic options, 1247
 - expanded options of, 1247
 - tabs and features of, 1247–1250
- exporting**
 - automating XML export in Visual Basic, 1256–1260
 - data, A79–A83
 - to another Access database, A79–A80
 - to ODBC database, A82–A83
 - to SharePoint Services, 1182–1186
 - to spreadsheet or dBASE or Paradox file, A80
 - to text file, A81
 - to Word mail merge document, A81–A82
 - database as static HTML file, 1140–1143
 - formatted datasheets, 1146–1148
 - objects with macro action, A116, A117
 - report with template, 1152–1154
 - XML from Access, 1245–1254
 - as Active Server Page, 1249, 1250
 - forms and reports, 1250–1254
 - tables and queries, 1246–1250

ExportXML command, 1256

Expression Builder, 371–376

- adding functions to, 372
- illustrated, 371
- name separators inserted by, 373
- opening from Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
- usefulness of, 375

Expression clause, A39–A41

Expression Web, 1128, 1135, 1139, 1159

expressions, 362–370. *See also* Expression Builder

- arithmetic, 364–370
- calculating totals on, 838
- concatenating Null values in, 364, 420
- conditional
 - macros use of, 900–901
 - using DLookup and IsNull functions in macros, 930–931
- constraint
 - adding, 1478–1479
 - examples of, 1481–1482
 - multiple, 1481
- defining
 - as report groups, 761, 763
 - in totals queries, 439
- effect of report groupings on, 818
- entering in Zoom window, 362–363
- field names in, 362
- filtering append query by date/time, 503–504
- fully qualifying field names in, 372
- including in update queries, 489
- parentheses in, 370
- quantified predicates with, A54–A55
- referencing table fields in update query, 492
- text, 362–364
- using Expression Builder for, 371–376
- viewing in Datasheet view, 363, 368

Extensible Markup Language. *See* XML (Extensible Markup Language)

External Data tab

- about, 24, 43–44
- illustrated, 43, 261
- import and export commands on, 261, 1183
- SharePoint List button on, 1183, 1184

Extract Database To dialog box, 1339

F

Feature Selection page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1352, 1353

Featured Online Templates (Getting Started screen), 21, 22

feedback on application design, A6

field independence, A24–A26

field list

- displaying all table fields in, 563–564
- dragging fields to form design grid from, 578–579
- illustrated, 564
- placing bound controls on form from, 573–574
- replacing with property sheet, 565
- selecting all fields in, 578
- undocking, 122

Field List button, 476

field names

- AutoCorrect options for, 192–193
- brackets around, 362
- changing, 212–217
- characters for separating table and, 372, 373
- duplicate, 836
- fully qualifying, 372
- including spaces in XML, 1263
- long names truncated when exported to dBASE or Paradox, A80
- omitting spaces in, 159, 216
- renaming in queries, 419
- requirements in expressions, 362
- separating names of SQL tables and, 373
- specifying in Import Text Wizard, 289
- using in simple queries, 377–378
- valid characters for, 159

fields. *See also* field names; selection criteria

- Access project columns vs., 1458
- adding to custom form, 610–611
- adding to table template, 1261–1264
- adjusting width of in Layout view, 802, 804
- attributes stored in, 5
- bug causing incorrect positioning on form grid, 627
- captions
 - changing PivotTable, 477
 - as column header for data exported to spreadsheet, A80
- changing, maximum length of data, 230–231
- concatenating with & character, 362
- conditional formatting for form, 716–719
- converting spreadsheet Zip, 275
- copying, 222–224
- creating relationship on multiple, 186–187
- data types
 - conversions affecting contents of, 226
 - listing of, 157–161
 - unable to change if joining tables, 204
 - unavailable for data collection, 311
- defined, 4
- defining, 156–157, 166–167
 - order of table, 178
- deleting, 225
- design concept of, A17

- displaying Null value in text, 657
- dragging and dropping
 - into Query window, 352
 - in simple input form, 578–580
- editing on one side of join, 419
- entering selection criteria for, 355–356
- formatting Rich Text form, 324
- generating error messages for, 168
- inserting, 220–222
 - hyperlinks in, 398–400
- keyboard shortcuts for, 542–543
- linking tables with field definitions, 181–183
- list of PivotTable, 474
- modifying
 - data selected in, 392
 - sequence of in table, 219–220
 - in table template, 1264–1265
- moving, 217–220
- Multi-Value Lookup, 245–248
- Null, 166
- outputting all in query, 452–453
- positioning in Layout view, 802
- presetting values to ensure data integrity, 935–938
- properties
 - for captions, 377
 - changing, 232–233
 - defining Lookup properties, 353
 - linking with subform control, 705
 - Lookup tab, 242
 - setting, 161–165
 - setting Description, 156
 - setting query, 353–355
 - viewing, 107–108
 - viewing for bound combo box, 604–605
 - viewing in Datasheet view, 354
- query updating multiple, 491–493
- referencing update query expressions, 492
- renaming template, 154
- report groupings effect on, 818
- Rich Text Format support for SharePoint text, 1170–1171
- selecting
 - all in field list, 578
 - all table, 352, 353
 - in Form Wizard, 593–594
 - multiple, 579
 - as report group, 762–763
 - Report Wizard, 778
 - as source for stored e-mail address, 315–316
- SharePoint Services, 1218, 1219
- sorting query recordsets by, 378–380, 421
- status set with toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
- unable to set default in date/time, 1063
- uniqueness of, A19–A20
- update limitations in queries, 468–469
- uses of, 99
- using in report calculations, 834
- USysRibbons table, 1266
- validation rules for, 165, 168–170, 381–382
- viewing form's, 115–116
- File Location tab (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1345, 1348**
- File New Database dialog box**
 - building new SQL Server database from, 1448, 1449
 - opening, 144
 - selecting folder to save database, 146
 - using existing SQL Server database, 1452–1453
- File Open dialog box, 262**
- file system functions, A90–A91**
- File Transport Protocol (FTP), 1138**
- files**
 - .accdB
 - about, 6
 - backing up, 205–207
 - compiling, 272
 - components of applications, 978
 - DAO model with desktop applications, 981
 - databases vs. projects, 1450
 - packaging and signing, 1338
 - publishing or moving to SharePoint Services, 1210, 1212
 - return DAO recordset for Recordset property, 1104
 - user-level security unsupported for, 12
 - .accde, 1330
 - .accdr, 1329
 - Access, 6
 - .accfl, 153
 - .adp
 - about, 132–133, 1448
 - application engine used by, 978–979
 - cautions viewing project recordsets for action queries, 1523
 - connecting to new SQL Server database, 1448–1451
 - creating, 1448–1457
 - installing SQL Server 2005 Express Edition to build, 1349
 - projects vs. databases, 1450
 - using with SQL Server, 6
 - views, functions, and stored procedures in, 135–137
 - changing to test runtime mode, 1329
 - dBASE
 - exporting Access data to, A80
 - importing, 260–264
 - linking to Access databases, 293, 298–299

files, *continued*

- delimited text, 282, 283–284, 288
- digitally signed, 1336
- displaying file name extensions, 102
- file system functions, A90–A91
- HTML, 1147–1148
- importing
 - Paradox, 265–266
 - XML, 1254–1260
- inserting in attachment fields, 546
- linking, 292
- .mdb
 - about, 6
 - Access architecture and compatibility with, 979
 - compatibility with temporary variables, 910
 - creating compiled version of, 272
 - embedded macros incompatible with, 907
 - user-level security support for, 12
- .mdf, 1455–1456
- .msi, 1340
- Paradox
 - exporting Access data to, A80
 - importing, 265–266
 - linking to Access databases, 293, 298–299
- sample
 - location of, 23, 103
 - modifying table design for, 204
 - working with project files, 1494–1495
- selecting multiple noncontiguous, 1082–1086
- text, 282–291
 - automating import specification of fixed-width, 291
 - data setup for fixed-width, 284–285
 - delimited or fixed-width, 282
 - exporting data to, A81
 - fixing errors in imported, 290
 - importing, 285–290
 - linking to Access databases, 300–301
 - preparing to import, 282
 - setting up delimited data, 283–284
- XML, 1237–1245
 - about, 1237
 - .htm, 1243–1245
 - .xml, 1237, 1238–1239
 - .xsd, 1237, 1239–1241, 1255
 - .xsl, 1241–1243
 - .xsx, 1243

fill characters embedded in format string, 653**Fill/Back Color button, 587, 588****filling**

- empty recordset cells with zero values, 446–447
- placeholder characters, 655–656

filling out

- application design worksheet, A9, A10, A12
- HTML forms, 322–325
- InfoPath forms, 337–341

Filter button, 385, 402**Filter By Form feature**

- illustrated, 555
- searching for states with, 410–411
- using custom Query By Form vs., 1086

Filter Fields drop zone, 474**filter icons, 408****Filter Selection button, 385****Filter window, 408–410****filtering. *See also* server filters**

- append query records by date/time, 503–504
- building query on query, 421–424
- data in Report view, 747–748
- database object lists, 49, 50, 52–53
- Filter By Form feature, 410–411
- form field data, 551, 554–556
- form objects, 114, 115
- form properties controlling, 673–674
- in-line functions, 1515, 1516
- limiting returned records for, 410
- linking
 - forms and subforms with, 1098–1099
 - to report using, 1099–1101
- modules, 130–131
- objects with Search Bar, 79–80
- one list with another, 1095–1097
- PivotTable data, 470
- report on opening based on parameters, 1121–1124
- saving and reusing filters, 412
- selections, 407–408
- stored procedures, 1493
- table data, 178

Find And Replace dialog box

- form searches with, 552–553
- searching data with, 405–406

Find button, 385**Find method, 1104****Find Unmatched Query Wizard, 432–434****FindFirst method, 1104****finding. *See* searching****finishing touches for applications, 1283–1317**

- controlling starting and running, 1310–1316
 - setting database startup properties, 1310–1312
 - starting and stopping application, 1312–1315
- customizing Ribbons, 1283–1302
 - disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284
 - dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299

- hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
- loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
- loading XML for, 1284–1287
- setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
- using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296
- XML code listing for, 1292–1294
- disabling Layout view, 1304
- fine-tuning with Performance Analyzer, 1302–1303
- performing final Visual Basic compile, 1316–1317
- switchboard forms for, 1305–1310
 - checking for duplicate keyboard shortcuts, 1305–1306
 - designing in Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310
 - illustrated, 1305
- First function**, 437
- fixed-width text files**
 - about, 282
 - automating import specification of, 291
 - setting up data for, 284–285
- flow control**
 - designing application task flow, A4
 - forms for, 517–518
 - macro actions for, A107–A108
 - statements
 - Call, 1017
 - Do...Loop, 1017–1018
 - For...Next, 1018–1019
 - For Each...Next, 1019–1020
 - GoTo, 1020–1021
 - If...Then...Else, 1021–1022
 - RaiseEvent, 1022–1023
 - Select Case, 1023–1024
 - Stop, 1024
 - text stored procedures, 1531–1535
 - Visual Basic, 1016–1026
 - While...Wend, 1025
 - With...End, 1025–1026
- focus**
 - controlling with macro actions, A113–A114
 - events detecting changes in, 874–875
 - setting to contextual tabs, 1301–1302
- folders**
 - Access Data Collection Replies, 331
 - designating as trusted location, 37–38
 - save new database to selected, 146
 - saving template files in appropriate, 197–199
- Font group**
 - buttons of, 582–583
 - illustrated, 582, 761
- Font Name combo box**, 648
- fonts**
 - aligning, 583
 - changing size for Query window, 467
 - creating shadowed effect behind label, 650
 - customizing form, 648–650
 - Font group buttons on Design tab, 582–583
 - guidelines for using, 650
 - meanings of font name icons, 649
 - printer, screen, and TrueType, 649
 - setting default datasheet options for Web, 1144–1145
- footers**
 - form, 518–519
 - report, 740–741
 - defining report with or without, 767–768
 - displaying page numbers in, 832–833
 - grand total in, 839–840, 843–844
- For...Next statement**, 1018–1019
- For Each...Next statement**, 1019–1020
- foreign keys**
 - defined, 415
 - efficiency and, A27
 - relationships between primary and, 416
 - updating values in child tables, 185
- form controls**
 - locking button on, 573
 - tab order for, 662–663
- form design**. *See* advanced form design
- Form Design Tools tab**
 - Controls group buttons on, 568–572, 583–584, 645–646
 - Font group buttons on, 582–583
- form grid**
 - horizontal ruler unavailable for, 633
 - incorrect field positioning on, 627
 - removing or setting dot color in, 564–565
 - snapping controls to, 617–619
 - units of measure in, 566
- form modules**
 - breakpoints ineffective if not open in Visual Basic Editor, 957
 - module objects vs., 944
- form properties**
 - border styles, 675–676
 - controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
 - defining pop-up or modal, 672–673
 - displaying, 586–587
 - listed on All tab, 676–680
 - preventing user's access to window controls, 675
 - restricting views for users, 670–671
 - rules for referencing, 919–920
 - setting navigation options, 671–672
- Form view**
 - Auto Resize unavailable in, 622
 - buttons in, 120
 - detecting filters applied to forms, 876

Form view, *continued*

- reviewing input form in, 589
- sizing subform controls in, 704
- trapped keyboard and mouse events properties in, 876–878
- viewing and editing data in Form window, 119–120

Form window

- in Design view, 114–121
- in Form view, 119–120
- in Layout view, 118–119, 563
- sizing to fit form automatically, 622

Form Wizard

- building single continuous form in, 697–698
- creating basic form, 593–597
 - picking form style, 594–596
 - selecting fields, 593–594
- illustrated, 689
- justified formats for forms in, 597
- missing background images in, 595, 690
- modifying basic form, 598–601
- opening and using, 688–689
- quick create command forms vs., 593
- working with template as custom style, 692

Format function, 436**Format property**

- effect on underlying table's data, 654
- settings for Date/Time data type, 657–658
- settings for Number and Currency data types, 652
- Yes/No data type settings, 660

formatting

- column of controls, 630–631
- conditional
 - using in forms, 716–719
 - using in reports, 848–851
- exporting datasheet to HTML with, 1146–1148
- Rich Text fields, 324

formatting characters

- Date/Time, 658–660
- Number and Currency, 653–654
- Text data type, 655–656

forms, 517–734. *See also* advanced form design; HTML**forms; multiple-page forms**

- about, 100
- ActiveX objects in, 533–535
- adding records in, 543–548
- adding smart tags to controls, 663–665
- advanced design, 685–734
 - ActiveX Calendar control, 726–730
 - basing on multiple-table query, 686–691
 - conditional formatting, 716–719
 - displaying values in option group, 714–716
 - embedded subforms, 692–713

- multiple-page forms, 520, 723–726
- PivotChart forms, 730–734
- working with tab control, 719–723

architecture

- in Access, 980

- conceptual, 560–561

attachment controls, 530–533**automated processes in, 561, 562****border formatting for, 583–584****bound and unbound, 566****building simple input**

- adding new query for property, 576–578
- contextual Ribbon tabs for, 567–572
- creating and setting dimensions, 563–567
- customizing colors and reviewing design, 587–589
- displaying form properties, 586–587
- dragging fields to form, 578–580
- font options for, 582–583

Form Wizard, 593–597**label properties for, 585–586****locking control button, 573****modifying Form Wizard forms, 598–601****moving and sizing controls, 580–581****placing bound controls from field list, 573–574****quick create commands for, 590–593****setting object properties, 574–578****setting text box properties, 584–585****specifying record source, 566–567****changing and deleting data on, 550–551****choosing width and height of, 565****command buttons, 517, 535–536, 537****continuous, 520–521, 592****controls in, 526****customizing, 609–683****adding fields, 610–611****adjusting layout of controls, 616–617****cautions setting control validation rules, 670****colors and special effects for, 645–646****completing form design, 640–642****control anchoring, 623–624****control padding, 638–640****creating blank form, 609****dragging and dropping field in Layout view, 623–624****enabling and locking controls, 584–585, 662****fonts, 648–650****formatting column of controls, 630–631****formatting properties, 651–661****Layout view's advantages for, 623, 642****lines and rectangles, 642–645****lining up controls, 619–622, 625–626****moving controls within control layout, 626–630****placing controls into control layout, 635–638**

- properties controlling appearance, 670–680
- removing control layout, 632–635, 640–642
- scroll bar, 661
- setting form and control defaults, 680–683
- setting tab order, 662–663
- sizing controls to fit content, 612–616
- sizing window to fit form, 622
- snapping controls to grid, 617–619
- defining
 - default templates for, 682–683
 - structure in Design view, 114–117
- Detail section of
 - about, 518–519
 - grid dots in, 564–565
 - selecting width and height, 566
- displaying photographs in, 9
- Edit and Navigation modes for, 541
- editing
 - data in Form view, 119–120
 - XML USysRibbons table in, 1269
- emphasizing fields with rectangles, 644–645
- events
 - detecting filters, 876
 - opening and closing, 870–871
 - trapped keyboard and mouse, 876–878
 - triggering macros, 560
 - understanding sequence in editing, 882–885
- exporting XML, 1250–1254
- filtering, 551, 554–556
- font guidelines for, 650
- formatting properties for, 670–680
 - border styles, 675–676
 - controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
 - listing of property sheet All tab, 676–680
 - navigation options, 671–672
 - pop-up or modal forms, 672–673
 - restricting views for users, 670–671
 - window controls, 675
- function of, 114
- headers and footers in, 518–519
- hyperlinks in, 547–548
- justified formats for Form Wizard, 597
- keyboard shortcuts for, 541–543
- linking to subform with filter, 1098–1099
- locating rows in recordset, 1104
- macros
 - for opening secondary, 921–924
 - synchronizing related, 924–928
- making design changes on finished, 589
- modal, 524–525, 673
- modifying, 212
 - keyboard options for, 392–393
 - in Layout view, 118–119
- moving around, 539–541
- navigation buttons and command icons for, 540
- opening in Dialog mode, 1058–1059
- PivotTables and PivotCharts in, 536–539
- pop-up
 - formatting properties for, 672–673
 - synchronizing, 1101–1104
 - working with, 523–524
- prefixes in names of sample, 525
- printing, 518, 557–558
- procedural vs. object-oriented programming of, 560–562
- project, 1547–1565
 - applying server filters, 1558–1561
 - changing Default Max Records property, 1555–1557
 - configuring input parameters, 1561–1565
 - differences in, 1547–1554
 - fetching recordsets, 1548
 - properties for, 1552–1554
 - setting options for, 1549–1551
 - setting recordset type, 1554–1555
 - similarities with database forms, 1547
 - unsupported in Layout view, 1552
- property sheets for, 116–117
- providing custom query by, 1086–1093
- relationship to other Access objects, 100–101
- searching for data in, 551–554
- setting datasheet format for in Datasheet view, 1145
- simplifying data input, 601–607
 - toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
 - using combo and list boxes, 601–605
- sorting field data in, 551, 554
- split, 522, 590–591
- subforms, 522–523
- switchboard, 1305–1310
 - checking for duplicate keyboard shortcuts, 1305–1306
 - designing in Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310
- synchronizing with class event, 1101–1104
- tab controls, 530
- testing code for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
- totals queries not useful in, 435
- triggering data task from related, 1105–1109
- uses of, 517–518
- viewing
 - data in, 539
 - fields for, 115–116
- Visual Basic form modules, 944
- Forms collections, 919, 987–988. *See also* forms

- Forms object type, 48
 - Formulas button, 475
 - forward slash (/)
 - dividing numeric expressions with, 365, 373
 - operator precedence for, 367
 - *forward slash (/), 1528
 - forward slash* (/), 1528
 - four-arrow cross-hair mouse pointer, 581
 - four-digit year values, 191–192, 651, 1489
 - FoxPro. *See also* Visual FoxPro
 - exporting data to, A82–A83
 - specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47
 - frm prefix, 525
 - FROM clause, 464, A41–A44
 - fsub prefix, 525
 - FTP (File Transport Protocol), 1138
 - FULL [OUTER] JOIN statement, A42
 - full outer joins, 1502
 - Fully Enclosed option (Access Options dialog box), 612
 - Function Parameters tab (Properties window), 1518, 1519
 - function queries, 1525
 - function reference tables, A85–A91
 - arithmetic, A85–A86
 - conversion, A86–A87
 - date/time, A87
 - logic, A88
 - string, A89–A90
 - user interface/system/file system, A90–A91
 - Function statement
 - about, 1006–1007
 - placing in middle of VB procedures, 947
 - functional dependence, A21–A23
 - functions
 - about, 1005
 - adding
 - to Expression Builder, 372
 - to project, 1495–1496
 - aggregate
 - about, A35
 - available as Group By options in query designer, 1506
 - defining in totals queries, 435–436, 437
 - limitations updating, 1508
 - using in SELECT queries, A35
 - Avg, 437
 - Count, 437
 - CurrentDb, 989
 - Date, 503, 830–831
 - date and time, 375–376
 - DateDiff, 365–368, 373
 - DatePart, 365
 - declaring, 1006–1007
 - defined, 1493
 - defining as method, 1005
 - domain, 1057
 - First, 437
 - Format, 436
 - in-line, 1513–1519
 - available properties for, 1517–1519
 - building, 1514–1516
 - constructing to create updatable recordsets, 1514
 - declaring parameter to filter, 1515, 1516
 - input parameters to control data returned with, 1561–1565
 - naming parameters for, 1517
 - reasons for using, 1513
 - server filters with forms bound to, 1558
 - testing, 1516–1517
 - IsNothing, 1056
 - IsNull, 930–931
 - Last, 437
 - logic, A88
 - Max and Min, 437
 - MsgBox, 911, 932, 933
 - Now, 831
 - project file, 135
 - querying Access project file with, 1493
 - Reconnect, 1323
 - reference tables, A85–A91
 - arithmetic, A85–A86
 - conversion, A86–A87
 - date/time, A87
 - logic, A88
 - string, A89–A90
 - user interface/system/file system, A90–A91
 - scalar
 - defined, 1493
 - including in parentheses, 1542
 - table-valued functions vs., 1544
 - text table-valued vs., 1543
 - StDev, 437
 - Sum, 437, 446–447
 - text scalar, 1541–1543
 - text table-valued, 1543–1545
 - Var, 437
 - WriteHTML, 1154–1156
- ## G
- General tab (Design view), 161–165
 - General tab (Options dialog box), 949
 - Get External Data - Access Database dialog box, 271, 296
 - Get External Data - dBASE File dialog box, 261, 263, 299
 - Get External Data - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box, 276, 281, 300

- Get External Data - SharePoint Site wizard, 1187-1190
 - importing source data from, 1187-1188
 - saving import steps, 1189-1190
 - selecting lists for import to Access, 1188, 1189
 - linking data source with, 1191-1195
 - specifying lists, 1192-1193
- Get External Data - Text File dialog box, 286
- Get External Data - XML File wizard, 1254
- Getting Started screen
 - about, 21-22, 102
 - Blank Database icon on, 148
 - Blank Database task pane, 196
- global settings in Access Options dialog box, 87-97
- global variables, 961
- GoTo statement, 1020-1021
- grand totals
 - calculating in report footer, 843-844
 - creating, 839-840
- graphical calendar, 1063-1069
- greater than (>) values
 - comparing values with, 169
 - returning query results with, 1503, A42
- greater than or equal to sign (>=)
 - comparing values with, 168, 169
 - returning query results with, 1503, A42
- Grid X and Grid Y properties, 587, 760
- grid dots
 - property settings making invisible, 587
 - setting color or removing, 564-565
- grid pane (query designer), 1497, 1500, 1503-1507
- gridlines
 - setting default datasheet options for Web, 1144
 - Sunken or Raised option disabling in Datasheet
 - Formatting dialog box, 1146
- Group, Sort, And Total pane, 761-769
 - adding new group level on grid, 764
 - changing grouping and sorting priorities, 768-769
 - data types unavailable in, 763
 - defining report groups, 761, 762-763
 - entering titles, 766-767
 - group interval options, 765-766
 - grouping specifications and data types, 765
 - headers/footers options for reports, 767-768
 - illustrated, 762
 - opening, 761-762
 - printing options for groupings, 768
 - selecting totals options in, 766
 - sort order and options in, 764-765
 - understanding grouping options, 818
- Group button, 642-643
- Group By button, 1505
- GROUP BY clause

- overview of, A44-A45
- selecting Group By options in query designer, 1506
- uses of, 464, A65-A66
- group intervals
 - effect of groupings on, 818
 - selecting, 765-766
 - setting in Report Wizard, 779-780
- Grouping & Totals group, 761
- Grouping Intervals dialog box, 780
- grouping macros, 897-900
- groupings
 - about report, 736
 - adding to report in Layout view, 792-795
 - adding values across report, 837-838
 - changing priorities of, 768-769
 - data types and specifications for, 765
 - defining report criteria for sorting and, 816-818
 - moving grouped controls, 642-643
 - printing options for, 768
 - setting in Report Wizard, 779-780
 - understanding options for, 818
- groups
 - adding, 59-60
 - adding to contextual tabs, 1276-1279
 - creating grouping options, 56-58
 - custom
 - creating object shortcuts in, 63-67
 - dragging and dropping objects into, 66
 - hiding, 67-69
 - modifying in custom categories, 59-63
 - renaming, 59, 60
 - working with, 53-55
 - disabling unused, 1283-1284
 - display order for, 61
 - filtering objects by, 49, 50, 81-82
 - found on Database Tools tab, 44-45
 - included in
 - Object Type category, 57
 - Tables And Related Views category, 57
 - macro, 897-898
 - Navigation Pane
 - collapsing in, 49
 - initial placement of, 62-63
 - report headers and footers for contact, 739-741

H

- handles, control, 580-581
- hard drive space requirements, 1341
- hardware requirements for Access, 1341
- HasModule property, 944
- HAVING clause, 464, A45

headers

Add New button in, 545
form

example of, 518–519
multiple-page, 520

report

about, 739–740, 741
building report with or without, 767
displaying page numbers in, 832–833
repeating on subreports, 851–854

height of form, 565

hexadecimal code for color names, A93–A99

Hidden check box (Properties dialog box), 70, 75

hidden columns in SharePoint lists, 1206, 1219

Hide Details button, 476, 477

Hide Duplicates property, 840–841

hiding

document tabs, 85–86
existing Ribbon elements, 1271–1272
Navigation Pane
on application startup, 1311
contextual tabs hidden when collapsed, 739
custom groups and object shortcuts, 67–71
options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
redundant report values, 840–841, 842
status bar, 1311
Unassigned Objects group, 67, 68, 74

Home tab, 24, 42

horizontally

moving one or more controls, 621
selecting all controls in horizontal area, 588, 600

hourglass mouse pointer, 897

Housing.accdB database

displaying list of tables for, 105–106
function of reports for, 120–121
macros in, 128–130
modules of, 130–132
role of forms in, 114

.htm file type, 1237, 1243–1245

HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 1128–1135. *See also* HTML forms

acceptance of XML and, 1235
editing, 1134–1135
exporting datasheet with formatting to, 1146–1148
generating HTML page from Access report, 1151–1154
members for HTML objects, 1132
missing graphic or background on Web page, 1150
static documents in, 1140–1158
customizing appearance of Datasheet view, 1143–1148
designing and using output templates, 1148–1151
tag members, 1131–1134

tags

applying to complex Web page, 1133–1134
browsers' rendering of, 1131
common coding, 1129–1131
commonly used members of, 1133
viewing behind Web page, 1128
writing from Visual Basic, 1154–1158

HTML editors, 1128

HTML files

opening in browser after export complete, 1147
output options for exported, 1147–1148

HTML forms, 305–322

choosing recipients for, 320–321
collecting data with, 307–308
customizing message, 318–319
data types unavailable for, 311
date to stop processing replies, 315
defining collection fields as lookup values, 324
e-mail addresses for, 315–317
filling out, 322–325
finding addresses in table, 317–318
formatting Rich Text fields in, 324
getting started with, 306–307
Hyperlink data types in, 321
including lookup values in, 324–325
InfoPath forms vs., 327
instructing recipient to click Reply, 319
new or updated data collection for, 308–309
previewing message in Outlook, 321–322
processing live data on Web pages with, 1160
reply processing for, 312–313
selecting data to collect in, 309–310
wizard's summary of process, 320

HTML Output Options dialog box, 1147–1148, 1150

HTML template tokens, 1149

HTTP (Hypertext Transport Protocol), 1138

Hyperlink data type, 158, 160

about, 397
collecting data via e-mail with, 321
converting, 227
example of converting, 229–230

hyperlinks

activating, 398
adding or editing in forms, 547–548
bug fixed for *mailto:* protocol prefix, 1062
editing, 400–401
fixing e-mail, 1061–1062
inserting, 398–400
viewing, 397–398

Hypertext Markup Language. *See* HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)

Hypertext Transport Protocol (HTTP), 1138

I Want The Combo Box To Look Up The Values In A Table Or Query option (Combo Box Wizard), 602

I-bar, 802–803

icons

- action query, 490
- asterisk, 390
- Blank Database, 148
- delete query, 490
- filter, 408
- font name, 649
- linked data source, 260
- linked SharePoint Services table indicator, 1193
- make-table queries, 490
- mouse pointer
 - crosshairs, 581, 643
 - double arrow, 580, 581
 - hourglass, 897
 - rectangular, 352, 353
- pencil, 390, 1229
- viewing filter, 408

@IDENTITY system variable, 1531, 1533, 1534, 1535

If...Then...Else statement, 1021–1022

IF/ELSE statements, 1531, 1532

Ignore Duplicate Key check box (Properties dialog box), 1473, 1474

IIS (Internet Information Services), 1159

images

- embedding photographs in reports, 744–745
- loading into custom Ribbon controls, 1299–1300
- missing graphic on Web page, 1150

Immediate window (VBE), 952–956

- executing Visual Basic commands in, 952–953
- illustrated, 945, 955
- using breakpoints in, 954–956

IMP operator, A55, A56

Import Objects dialog box, 269, 272

Import Specification dialog box, 291

Import Spreadsheet Wizard, 277–279, 280

Import Text Wizard, 287–290, 291

Import XML dialog box, 1255

importing. *See also* collecting data via e-mail

- Access objects, 271–273
- dBASE files, 260–264
- linking vs., 259–260
- modifying imported tables, 292
- objects with macro action, A116, A117
- Paradox files, 265–266
- reasons for, 253
- SharePoint list to Access, 1186–1191
- spreadsheets, 273–282
 - fixing errors in imported data, 280–282

preparing for import, 274–275

SQL tables, 266–270

text files, 282–291

XML files, 1254–1260

.xsd files, 1255

ImportXML command, 1256

IN clause

- Access' addition of, A34
- overview, A46–A47

IN operator, 169, 360–361

IN predicate, A47–A48

indenting Visual Basic coding, 948–949

indexes

- about, 99
- adding project, 1471–1475
- creating unique, 1473
- defined, 188
- ignoring duplicate key for unique, 1474
- limitations of, 201
- multiple-field, 190–191, 1219
- selecting imported spreadsheet fields for, 278
- single-field, 188–189

Indexes window, 190

Indexes/Keys tab (Properties dialog box), 1472, 1473, 1475

infinity symbol, 185

InfoPath forms, 327–337

- allowing multiple rows per reply, 314–315
- choosing to use, 307–308, 328–329
- collecting new or updated data, 329–330
- compatibility with Internet Explorer, 1342
- data collection steps with, 327–328
- deleting records in, 340
- filling out, 337–341
- HTML forms vs., 327
- managing and resending data messages, 343–345
- multiple records within, 314
- processing replies
 - manually, 341–343
 - methods for, 331–332
- selecting source and table for e-mail address, 332–334
- sending messages, 336–337, 340–341
- specifying data to collect, 330–331
- warning messages for, 335–336
- writing message for, 334–335

information, A10

inheritance, 354

In-Line Function tab (Properties window), 1518

in-line functions, 1513–1519

- available properties for, 1517–1519
- building, 1514–1516
- constructing to create updatable recordsets, 1514

in-line functions, *continued*

- declaring parameter to filter, 1515, 1516
- defined, 1493
- input parameters to control data returned with, 1561–1565
- reasons for using, 1513
- server filters with forms bound to, 1558
- testing, 1516–1517

INNER JOIN statement, A42**inner joins, 414–421**

- defined, 414
- editing fields on one side of, 419
- selecting tables for, 415

input for application tasks, A11**Input Mask property, 1063****Input Mask settings, 661****Input Mask Wizard, 171–174****input masks**

- limitations of, 174
- list of characters for, 170–171
- missing characters in, 174
- placeholder characters for, 171, 172
- storing formatting characters with data, 173
- time values prevented with, 361
- unable to set defined default value in date/time field, 1063

input parameters

- server filters vs., 1572
- setting for forms, 1561–1565
- using in project reports, 1572–1577
- using separate queries with filters vs., 1563

Input Parameters property, 1574–1575**Insert ActiveX Control dialog box, 727–728****Insert Hyperlink dialog box, 400, 547****Insert SQL button, 1530****INSERT statement (append query), A73–A75****Insert Subdatasheet dialog box, 389****inserting**

- control labels, 581
- fields, 220–222
- files in attachment fields, 546
- hyperlinks, 398–400

Install Now button, 1346**Installation Options tab (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1344, 1348****installing software, 1341–1360**

- converting from previous release of Access, 1358–1360
- hardware requirements for, 1341
- Microsoft Office system, 1342–1349
 - entering information on User Information tab, 1345–1346
 - options for first-time installations, 1342–1347, 1348
 - setting default location on File Location tab, 1345
 - starting setup program, 1342
 - SQL Server 2005 Express Edition, 1349–1358
 - upgrading previous Office version, 1347–1349

instances, 5**International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 1128, 1236****Internet Explorer**

- browser's rendering of tags, 1131
- color names in, A93–A99
- display of complex Web page, 1134
- downloading SharePoint database with, 1224
- simple Web page in, 1130
- version compatible with Office, 1342
- viewing HTML behind Web page, 1128

Internet Information Services (IIS), 1159**Internet Protocol (IP), 1137****Internet SMTP/POP3 service, 1341****intervals**

- settings for DateDiff function, 365–366
- using values in DatePart function, 365

IP (Internet Protocol), 1137**IPX/SPX protocol, 1138****IRibbonUI methods, 1298****IS NOT NULL operator, 168, 169****IsNothing function, 1056****IsNull function, 930–931****ISO (International Organization for Standardization), 1128, 1236****Issue List form, 24****Issues list (SharePoint Services), 1230, 1233****Issues Sample database**

- categories listed for, 49
- customizing categories for, 54–55
- opening, 46
- selecting, 23

Issues template, 152, 153**J****JavaScript, 1128****Join Line tab (Properties dialog box), 1502, 1503****Join Properties dialog box, 416, 425****joins**

- creating with in-line functions, 1514–1515
- defined, 5
- inner, 414–421
- joining tables on zero-length strings, 166
- left, right, and full outer, 1502
- normalizing joined table data, 414
- outer, 425–431
- relationships between foreign and primary keys in, 416
- specifying

- with FROM clause, A42–A44
- for project queries, 1500–1503
- update limitations in queries using, 468–469
- using Find Unmatched Query Wizard with more than one field in, 433

jumping

- to objects in Navigation Pane, 46
- to statement with GoTo, 1020–1021

justified formats for forms in, 597

K

Keep Your System Running tool, 19

keyboard. *See also* keys

- modifying behavior for datasheets and forms, 392–393
- moving
 - fields with mouse and, 219
 - between parts of windows from, 222
- trapping events for, 876–878

keyboard shortcuts

- checking for duplicate, 1306
- combo box, 543
- Datasheet view, 386, 391
- field, 542–543
- form, 541–543

keys. *See also* primary keys

- AutoKeys macro codes for, 1316
- Ctrl
 - AutoKeys macro intercepting Ctrl+F4, 1315–1316
 - intercepting Ctrl+F4 combinations, 1315–1316
 - noncontiguous selections using, 579, 1082
- drawing straight lines while holding down Shift, 643
- Enter, 392
- Esc, 740
- modifying behavior of Left and Right Arrow, 392
- moving between parts of Design view window with F6, 222

keywords

- avoiding selection criteria as, 356
- Me, 990
- TOP, A62

L

labels

- adjusting Form Wizard, 599–600
- creating shadowed effect behind, 650
- deleting and attaching control, 581
- highlighting against dark background, 587–588
- lining up custom form, 619–622
- mailing
 - Avery label formats, 754, 1117
 - printing with data from multiple tables, 463–468
 - setting up multiple-column reports as, 753–754

- using partial page of, 1115–1118

- PivotChart display, 482–483

- printing company and contact, 754

- report column, 770–771

- sizing to fit form content, 612–616

landscape orientation for reports, 751, 752, 755

Last function, 437

layout

- justified formats for forms, 597
- modifying in SharePoint Datasheet view, 1178
- selecting choices for data in Form Wizard, 697
- selecting Report Wizard report, 781–782

Layout view

- aligning and positioning controls in, 623–642
 - adding control padding, 638–640
 - advantages in, 623, 642
 - completing form design, 640–642
 - control anchoring, 624–625
 - dragging and dropping field, 623–624
 - dragging selected controls to new column, 634–635
 - formatting column of controls, 630–631
 - incorrect field positioning on form grid, 627
 - lining up controls, 625–626
 - moving controls within control layout, 626–630
 - placing controls into control layout, 635–638
 - removing control layout, 632–635, 640–642
 - resizing controls, 631–632, 640

building reports in

- adding grouping and sorting, 792–796
- adjusting width of contact field, 802
- applying AutoFormat, 807–809
- positioning fields with vertical I-bar, 802–803
- resizing text box controls, 797–798
- selecting record source, 791–792
- starting with blank report, 790–792
- totals added to records, 804–807
- usefulness of, 797
- working with control layouts, 797–804

disabling, 1304

events unavailable in, 873

forms

- horizontal ruler unavailable for form grid, 633
- polishing subform design, 698–700
- preventing users from opening in, 671
- working with desktop database, 118–119

modifying Report Wizard reports in, 784–790

- accenting detail with background color, 788–789
- changing control properties, 787, 788
- resizing columns and fields, 784–785, 786
- resizing and repositioning controls, 785–787

opening Form window in, 563

project forms and reports unsupported in, 1552

viewing desktop database reports in, 125–127

left arrow button (<), 593

Left Arrow key, 392

left joins, 1502

LEFT [OUTER] JOIN statement, A42

legends for PivotCharts, 480–481

less than or equal to sign (<=)

comparing values with, 168, 169

returning query results with, 1503, A42

less than sign (<)

comparing values with, 168, 169

indicating lowercase characters, 655

returning query results with, 1503, A42

licensing agreements for SQL Server 2005 Express Edition, 1350

LIKE operator, 169, 360–361

LIKE predicate, A48–A49

Line tool, 642, 644

lines

adding to custom forms, 642–643

ensuring straight, 643

formatting control's border, 583–584

inserting in report, 771, 773

Link Child Fields property, 705, 706

Link Master Fields property, 705, 706

Link Tables dialog box, 297

Linked Table Manager, 303–304, 1323

linked tables

designing, A28

for desktop database, 1320–1328

splitting tables with Database Splitter wizard,
1320–1323

verifying and correcting linked table connections,
1323–1328

fields of

defining, 181–183

one-to-many relationships with, 184

indicator for SharePoint Services, 1193

linking

with other Access databases, 295–298

SQL tables to Access databases, 301–302

modifying, 302–303

unlinking, 303

linking data, 1098–1104. *See also* linked tables

about, 292

button for, 1098–1099, 1109–1114

Connect property when, 297

dBASE and Paradox files, 298–299

default record locking settings for, 294, 295

disconnecting from SharePoint Services when working
offline, 1227–1228

errors with, 301

icon for linked data source, 260

importing vs., 259–260

linking

forms with filter, 1098–1099

to report with filter, 1099–1101

performance considerations for, 293–295

PivotChart to form, 733–734

reasons for, 253

security information when, 293

SharePoint lists

to Access, 1191–1195

maintaining link to User Information List, 1194

options for, 1196–1198

subforms

automatic, 706

setting data relationships for, 705

synchronizing two forms with class event, 1101–1104

text or spreadsheet files, 300–301

unable to connect to database with multiple data
sources, 302

List Box button, 569

list boxes

about, 527–528

combo boxes vs., 528

formatting properties for data display, 651–661

illustrated, 528

keyboard shortcuts for, 543

multiple-selection, 1082–1086

Size To Fit command unavailable for, 614

List Options submenu for Windows SharePoint Services,
1196–1198

List Width lookup property, 244

lists in SharePoint, 216

adding columns to, 1175–1179

built-in views for, 1173

creating from within Access, 1198–1207

creating custom list, 1203–1207

using existing list template, 1199–1203

defined, 1168

deleting, 1198

editing data in, 1168–1172

importing to Access from SharePoint Services,
1186–1191

linking to Access, 1191–1195

missing records in imported, 1191

modifying design of, 1196

password protection for linked, 1198

permissions for, 1197

relinking to new site, 1197

restoring items to, 1181–1182

similarity between Access tables and, 1169

using options for linked lists, 1196–1198

LoadCustomUI method, 1285–1286, 1287

loading. *See also* randomly loading data
 frmProductAdd form, 1061
 images into custom Ribbon controls, 1299–1300
 Ribbon into Access data projects, 1286
 times for form and report modules, 944
 USysRibbons table during startup, 1267–1268
 XML for custom Ribbon, 1284–1287

Locals window (VBE)
 about, 946
 examining variable and object values in, 955
 illustrated, 945

Location dialog box, 1214

Locked property for controls, 584–585, 662

locked record errors, 512

locking
 button on form, 573
 controls, 584–585, 662
 query records, 462

log in as system administrator, 1452

logic functions, A88

Lookup properties, 240–245
 cautions using for fields, 242
 defining query, 353
 number values and sorting of, 381
 overview of, 243–244

lookup values
 avoiding data collection fields defined as, 324
 eliminating duplicate, 238
 including in HTML form, 324–325
 unable to specify for SQL Server 7.0 tables, 1470

Lookup Wizard, 158, 245

loops
 Change events contributing to endless, 873
 defining multiple executions with Do...Loop statement, 1017–1018
 executing code within For Each, 1020

Lotus 1-2-3. *See* spreadsheets

lowercase characters (<), 655

M

Machine Data Source tab (Select Data Source dialog box), 268

macro actions, 916–918, A101–A118
 AskEdit macro, 933
 avoiding SendKeys, A110
 built-in Visual Basic constants for, 1028
 categories of
 building custom menu and executing menu commands, A112
 controlling display and focus, A113–A114
 executing queries, A106–A107
 handling errors, A118
 informing user of macro actions, A115
 modifying objects, A115–A117
 opening/closing Access objects, A102–A104
 overview, A101
 printing data, A105–A106
 running another application, A118
 searching for data, A111
 setting values, A109
 testing conditions and controlling action flow, A107–A108
 Trusted column, A101
 using temporary variables, A117
 Clear MacroError, 916
 defining multiple, 895–897
 executing, 1026–1027
 OpenForm, 922–923
 opening list of, 891–892
 searching for data, A111
 SyncWeddingAndCity macro, 926
 trusted and not trusted, 916–918
 viewing
 complete list of, 892
 in Macro window, 929–930
 Visual Basic equivalents for, 1028

Macro Builder, 904–905

macro design window. *See* Macro window

macro groups
 about, 897–898, 928
 understanding and using, 929–934

Macro Name column (Macro window), 891, 921, 922

macro objects
 creating group of named macro procedures in, 898
 creating set of named actions within, 899
 name of, 900
 SampleMacro, 129

Macro Single Step dialog box, 894

Macro window, 890–893
 argument boxes in, 892–893
 automatically displaying Macro Name and Condition columns in, 891, 922
 entering macro arguments in, 890–891
 illustrated, 891
 layout of, 890–891
 moving between upper and lower parts of, 893
 not trusted macro actions in, 918
 opening Actions list in, 891–892
 viewing macros in macro groups, 929

MacroError object, 916, A118

macros, 887–940. *See also* events; macro objects; Macro window
 actions
 avoiding SendKeys, A110

macros, actions, *continued*

- building and executing menus and commands, A112
- categories of, A101-A118
- Clear MacroError, 916
- controlling display and focus, A113-A114
- displaying messages or beeping, A115
- handling errors, A118
- not trusted, 916-918
- running another application, A118
- setting values, A109
- using temporary variables, A117
- working with objects, A115-A117
- adding to Quick Access Toolbar, 30-31
- advantages of, 128
- AutoExec
 - about, 890
 - starting applications with, 1310, 1312
 - using, 896
- AutoKeys, 1052, 1315-1316
- calling MsgBox function, 911
- conditional expressions in, 900-901
- content security and, 34-35
- converting to Visual Basic, 938-940
- defined, 100
- defining multiple actions in, 129-130, 895-897
- embedded, 901-907
 - creating, 904-906
 - deleting, 906-907
 - editing, 902-904
 - saved with form or report control, 904
- error trapping, 910-915
 - clearing MacroError object, 916, A118
 - process using, 913-915
 - unactivated, 912-913
- grouping, 897-900
- Hourglass automatically restored after running, 897
- location in Unrelated Objects category, 51-52
- malicious, 916
- modifying, 212
- name of, 900
- opening secondary forms with, 921-924
- passing status information between linked forms, 934-935
- presetting values for validation, 935-938
- recommended for applications, 890
- referencing
 - controls and properties for forms and reports, 920
 - form and report objects, 919
 - form and report properties, 919-920
 - subforms and subreports, 920-921
 - temporary variables in, 991
- relationship to other Access objects, 101
- resetting Page property value with, 833

- revising order on Quick Access Toolbar, 32
- saving, 893-894
- single stepping through, 894, 951
- synchronizing related forms, 924-928
- temporary variables in, 907-910
- testing, 894-895
- triggering with form events, 560
- untrusted locations
 - disabling in, 1225
 - enabling for, 38
- uses of, 887, 888-889
- validating data, 928-934
- Visual Basic
 - equivalents for macro actions, 1028
 - executing macro actions in, 1026-1027
 - using macros with, 890, 1052
 - using VB procedures instead of, 1052-1053

Macros object type, 48**Mail, 1341****mail merge documents, A81-A82****mailing labels**

- Avery label formats, 754, 1117
- printing
 - company and contact, 754
 - with data from multiple tables, 463-468
- setting up multiple-column reports as, 753-754
- using partial page of, 1115-1118

mailto: protocol prefix, 1062**main forms, 706-710. *See also* subforms****Make-Table dialog box, 500****make-table queries**

- append vs., 502
- assigning alias to field lists in, 496, 497
- command on Design contextual tab for, 488
- converting from select query, 500
- creating, 496-500
- defined, 485
- icon for, 490
- limitations of, 501
- running, 500-502
- SELECT...INTO statements as, A75-A76
- verifying data in, 496

malicious macros, 916**manually processing e-mail replies, 321-322, 341-343****many-to-many relationships**

- about, 5
- defining linking table to create, 1077-1078
- embedding subforms to reflect, 693
- order-entry examples demonstrating, A8

many-to-one forms

- about, 686
- designing all query fields in, 688-691
- how related information displays in, 691

many-to-one query as record source for, 687–688
margins, 736

Max function, 437

Max Records property, 462, 1550, 1555

Maximize button

- disabling, 675
- not in window, 109
- using, 108

MDAC (Microsoft Data Access Components), 981

.mdb files

- about, 6
- Access architecture and compatibility with, 979
- compatibility with temporary variables, 910
- creating compiled version of, 272
- embedded macros incompatible with, 907
- user-level security support for, 12

.mdf files, 1455–1456

MDI. *See* multiple-document interface (MDI)

Me object and keyword, 990

members

- commonly used tag, 1133
- HTML object, 1132

Memo data type, 226–227

memory requirements, 1341

menus

- macro actions building and executing commands on, A112
- shortcut
 - accessing table's commands from, 106–107
 - displaying single Navigation Pane categories with, 81
- Subdatasheet, 388
- submenus
 - Bitmap Image Object, 534
 - view by, 76
 - viewing categories of, 72

Message Bar

- enabling or disabling, 38
- security alerts on, 35

message boxes

- confirming deleting or pasting, 396
- macro actions displaying, A115
- MsgBox function for, 911, 932, 933

messages. *See also* data collection messages; error messages; warning messages

- action query error, 513–514
- e-mail data collection, 318–319, 334–335
- form information displayed in, 518

methods

- ActiveX, 7–8
- defined, 560
- defining subroutines as, 1005
- Find, 1104

FindFirst, 1104

IRibbonUI, 1298

LoadCustomUI, 1285

object, 993–1005

- executing commands with DoCmd object, 1005
- using ADO recordsets, 1001–1005
- Visual Basic, 993
- working with DAO recordsets, 994–997

OpenRecordset, 994–995

Quit, 1328

referencing in variables created by macros, 991

RunCommand, 1027

Microsoft Access Database Engine (DBEngine)

- about, 978
- DBEngine object created by, 979, 982–984

Microsoft Data Access Components (MDAC), 981

Microsoft Exchange, 1341

Microsoft Exchange Server 2000, 1342

Microsoft Expression Web, 1128, 1135, 1139, 1159

Microsoft FoxPro. *See* FoxPro; Visual FoxPro

Microsoft InfoPath. *See* InfoPath forms

Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS), 1159

Microsoft Mail, 1341

Microsoft MVPs (Most Valuable Professionals), 17

Microsoft .NET Framework, 1159

Microsoft Office Access 2007. *See* Access

Microsoft Office Access dialog box, 546, 547

Microsoft Office Access Security Notice dialog box, 1338–1339

Microsoft Office Button

- commands available from, 25–27
- hiding options on, 1300–1301
- using, 24, 25–27

Microsoft Office Excel. *See* Excel

Microsoft Office Genuine Advantage confirmation dialog box, 145, 146

Microsoft Office Live Web site, 1161–1162, 1166

Microsoft Office Outlook. *See* Outlook

Microsoft Office Security Options dialog box, 36

Microsoft Office system

- Document Lists of Control IDs, 1270–1271
- installing, 1342–1349
 - entering information on User Information tab, 1345–1346
 - first-time installation options, 1342–1347, 1348
 - hardware requirements for, 1341
 - setting default location on File Location tab, 1345
 - starting setup program, 1342
- integrating with SharePoint Services, 1162–1163
- product key for, 1342
- upgrading previous version, 1347–1349
- XML capabilities of, 1136–1137

- Microsoft Office Trusted Location dialog box, 40
- Microsoft Office Word mail merge documents, A81–A82
- Microsoft Paint, 535
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005. *See* SQL Server 2005
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition. *See* SQL Server 2005 Express Edition
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition Setup dialog box, 1352–1357
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup dialog box, 1350, 1351–1352, 1357
- Microsoft SQL Server Database Wizard, 1450–1451
- Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE), 132, 1494
- Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard
 - Authentication Mode page, 1353–1354
 - Completing Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Setup page, 1357–1358
 - Configuration Options page, 1354, 1355
 - Error And Usage Report Settings page, 1354, 1355
 - Feature Selection page, 1352, 1353
 - Ready To Install page, 1355–1356
 - Registration Information page, 1352–1353
 - Setup Progress page, 1356–1357
 - System Configuration Check page, 1351–1352
- Microsoft Visual Basic Scripting Edition (VBScript), 1128, 1158
- Microsoft Visual FoxPro. *See* Visual FoxPro
- Microsoft Visual Studio, 664, 1161
- Microsoft Visual Studio .NET, 1131, 1160–1161
- Microsoft Windows Installer setup file (.msi), 1340
- Microsoft Windows Internet Explorer. *See* Internet Explorer
- Microsoft Windows Vista. *See* Windows Vista
- migrating database to SharePoint site, 1207–1233. *See also* publishing database to SharePoint site
 - about, 1207–1208
 - opening database from SharePoint, 1223–1226
 - publishing vs., 1207
 - republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
 - steps to move database, 1212–1219
 - synchronizing changes after working offline, 1230–1233
 - ways SharePoint handles migrated data, 1218–1219
 - working offline, 1226–1229
- Min function, 437
- Min Max Button property, 675
- Minimize button
 - disabling, 675
 - not in window, 109
 - using, 108
- minus sign (–)
 - arithmetic operator, 365
 - as character in format string, 653, 655
 - operator precedence for, 367
- missing background images in Form Wizard, 595, 690
- missing characters in input masks, 174
- Mod operator
 - function of, 365
 - integer as result of operations with, 373
 - operator precedence for, 367
- modal forms
 - about, 524–525
 - formatting and using, 673
- Modal property, 672
- Modify Button dialog box, 31
- Modify This View command (SharePoint), 1176, 1177
- modifying list design (SharePoint Services), 1196
- modifying table design. *See also* Table Analyzer Wizard
 - before starting, 204–205
 - changing
 - data attributes, 225–233
 - field names, 212–217
 - field properties, 232–233
 - maximum length of data, 230–231
 - primary key, 248–250
 - checking object dependencies, 207–209
 - compacting database, 250–251
 - converting data types, 226–230
 - copying fields, 222–224
 - dealing with conversion errors, 231–232
 - deleting
 - fields, 225
 - tables, 209–210
 - eliminating duplicate lookup values, 238
 - inserting fields, 220–222
 - Lookup properties, 240–245
 - making database backups before, 205–207
 - modifying imported tables, 292
 - moving fields, 217–220
 - Multi-Value Lookup Fields, 245–248
 - reasons for, 203–204
 - reducing redundant data, 234
 - renaming tables, 211–212
 - reversing changes, 234
 - Table Analyzer Wizard recommendations for, 236
- Module button, 1330
- module objects (Visual Basic)
 - creating module with, 942–943
 - form and report modules vs., 944
- modules, 130–132, 942–944
 - about, 100
 - class, 1009–1016
 - defined, 943, 1009
 - form and report, 944
 - Private statement in, 972–973

- Property Get procedure in, 1010–1012
- Property Let procedure, 1012–1014
- Property Set procedure, 1014–1016
- Public statement in, 973–974
- signaling declared events in, 1022–1023
- understanding, 1009–1010
- using Event statement in, 971–972
- coding routines in, 130
- creating, 131
- customizing work with, 948
- declaring public variables and constants, 963–964
- filtering, 130–131
- form and report, 944
- including Option Explicit statements in Declarations sections of, 963
- modifying, 212
- module objects in Visual Basic, 942–943, 944
- procedures in, 947
- relationship to other Access objects, 101
- setting debugging breakpoints in, 951–952, 957
- standard
 - defined, 943
 - Private statement in, 972–973
 - Public statement in, 973–974
- unable to edit .accde, 1330
- Modules object type (Navigation Pane), 48**
- monitor requirements, 1341**
- More Pages button, 124**
- Most Valuable Professionals (MVPs), 17**
- mouse. *See also* mouse pointer**
 - moving
 - fields with keyboard and, 219
 - rows with, 218
 - opening objects with single- or double-click, 106
 - options for control selection, 612
 - selecting all label controls in column with, 630, 631
 - trapping events for, 876–878
- mouse pointer**
 - icons
 - crosshairs shape of, 581, 643
 - double arrow, 580, 581
 - hourglass, 897
 - rectangular, 352, 353
 - restoring after macros or procedures, 897
 - reverting to Select button after control placed on form, 573
- Move To SharePoint button, 1212**
- Move To SharePoint Site Wizard**
 - about, 1207
 - displaying location where migrated site is saved, 1215
 - log in to SharePoint site, 1213–1214
 - opening and entering address of SharePoint site and, 1213
 - showing details on migration, 1216
- moving. *See also* migrating database to SharePoint site**
 - columns, 150
 - controls
 - grouped, 642–643
 - horizontally or vertically, 621
 - and sizing, 580–581
 - within control layout, 626–630
 - cut objects to Clipboard, 210
 - fields, 217–220
 - HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
 - spreadsheet data to temporary table first, 275
 - within Macro window, 893
- MSDE (Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine), 132, 1494**
- MsgBox action, 932**
- MsgBox function**
 - calling in macro, 911
 - options settings for, 932
 - return values for, 933
- .msi files, 1340**
- MSys system tables, 1267**
- Multi Select property, 1084–1085, 1086**
- multiple constraint expressions, 1481**
- Multiple Items command, 592**
- multiple-column reports**
 - customizing width and height for, 753–754
 - uses for, 754
- multiple-document interface (MDI)**
 - about, 83–86
 - displaying or hiding document tabs, 85–86
 - working in, 85
- multiple-field indexes, 190–191**
- multiple-page forms, 723–726**
 - controlling tabbing on, 1080–1082
 - example of, 520
 - illustrated, 725, 726
 - inserting page break control, 724, 725
 - planning, 724
 - setting Cycle property for, 726, 1080
- multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086**
- multiple-table queries, 686–691**
- multiplying integer with currency fields, 373**
- Multi-Value Lookup Fields**
 - Contact Type field as, 245, 529
 - following normalization rules for, 248
 - working with, 245–248
- MVPs (Most Valuable Professionals), 17**

N

name separators in Expression Builder, 373

names

- automatic generation of SQL Server database, 1451
- brackets around object, 372
- checking for possible duplicates, 1071–1073
- custom list, 1203–1204
- eliminating extra blanks in personal, 420
- field, 362

- AutoCorrect options for, 192–193
- brackets around, 362
- changing, 212–217
- characters for separating table and, 372, 373
- duplicate, 836
- fully qualifying, 372
- including spaces in XML, 1263
- omitting spaces in, 159, 216
- renaming in queries, 419
- requirements in expressions, 362
- separating names of SQL tables and, 373
- specifying in Import Text Wizard, 289
- truncated when exported to dBASE or Paradox, A80
- using in simple queries, 377–378
- valid characters for, 159

naming

- copied tables, 207
- parameters for functions and stored procedures, 1517
- tables split by Table Analyzer Wizard, 237
- Visual Basic variables, 966
- prefixes of sample form, 525
- public variables and constants, 963–964
- spaces not contained in property, 920
- SQL Server Rules for Identifiers, 1460
- tracking AutoCorrect information for, 208
- UNC path, 1323
- using exclamation points and periods in, 989–990

National Language (Unicode) literal, 1515

Navigate To Category (Navigation Pane), 48

Navigation Buttons property, 671–672

Navigation mode for forms, 541

Navigation Options dialog box

- creating custom categories in, 58
- illustrated, 56
- opening, 55–56
- ordering category and group display, 61
- revealing hidden shortcuts in, 72–75
- setting up grouping options, 56–58
- Show System Objects check box, 1267, 1269
- working with groups in custom categories, 59–63

Navigation Pane, 45–82. *See also* groups; Navigation Options dialog box

- categories
 - display of single, 81

- using custom groups and, 53–55

- viewing from submenu, 72

collapsing

- group in, 49
- hiding contextual tabs when collapsed, 739
- width of, 47

creating

- modules in, 131
- object shortcuts in custom groups, 63–67

database object list filtering in, 49, 50

displaying custom group names, 62–63

embedding subform from, 703

expanding, 47

exporting files from, 1245–1246

filtering objects by group, 81–82

function of, 45–47

hiding

- on application startup, 1311
- custom groups and object shortcuts, 67–72

illustrated, 24, 46

initial placement of objects and groups in, 62–63

jumping to objects in, 46

manually sorting objects in, 77–78

new project's, 1457

Object Type category

- displaying tables only, 105–106

- filtering form objects, 114, 115

- groups included in, 57

- maximizing search for objects from, 82

- unable to reorder display, 61

- viewing objects organized in groups in, 105

object views in, 48–53

opening

- Navigation Options dialog box, 55–56

- queries from, 348

Query list in, 348

renaming object shortcuts, 70–72

revealing hidden shortcuts, 72–75

searching for database objects from, 78–82

setting up grouping options, 56–58

Single-Click options, 106

sorting and selecting views in, 76–77

Tables And Related Views category, 49–52

- adding groups to, 57

- filtering objects in, 52–53

- groups included in, 57

- maximizing search for objects from, 82

- switching to, 49–50

- unable to reorder display, 61

- Unrelated Objects category in, 51–52

viewing module objects in database, 942–943

width of

- collapsing, 47

- maintained from last use, 103

- .NET Framework, 1159
- NetBEUI protocol, 1138
- network protocols, 1138
- networks
 - Microsoft Office system installation on, 1342
 - reducing traffic with server filters, 1572
- New Item command, 1169
- New Object button, 890
- New Query dialog box
 - creating new views, functions, and stored procedures from, 1496
 - creating text table-valued function in, 1544
 - illustrated, 1524
 - selecting query wizard in, 432
- new row indicator, 385
- newsgroups for Access, 17
- nonclustered indexes, 1471, 1472
- noncontiguous selections
 - choosing multiple, 1082–1086
 - deselecting fields, 579
 - holding down Ctrl key for, 579, 1082
- non-equijoins, A42
- Normal template, 682
- normalization, A19–A27
 - field independence, A24–A26
 - field uniqueness, A19–A20
 - four rules of table design, A27
 - functional dependence of fields on primary key, A21–A23
 - rules for Multi-Value Lookup Fields, 248
 - unique identifier or primary key, A20–A21
- not trusted macros
 - defined, 916
 - listing of, 917–918
- Notepad for Ribbon construction, 1270, 1271
- NotInList event, 931, 1058–1061
- Now function, 831
- NULL predicate, A50
- Null values
 - about Null fields, 166
 - allowing with check constraints, 1482
 - concatenating in expressions, 364, 420
 - converting to zero values, 446–447
 - data type conversions setting content to, 226
 - displaying in text fields, 657
 - testing for with macro, 927
- Number data type
 - about, 158, 159
 - converting, 228
 - decimal fields in SharePoint Services converted to, 1219
 - displaying Null values for, 657
 - Format property setting for, 652

numbers

- adding report line, 846–848
- field properties for, 162
- formatting properties for, 652–654
- four-digit year formats, 191–192, 651, 1489
- page
 - inserting in controls, 806
 - report, 773–774, 830–833
 - report grouping options for, 818

O

- object dependencies, 207–209
- Object Dependencies pane, 209
- Object Designers category (Access Options dialog box), 90–91, 193–195, 415, 1489–1490
- object frame, 534
- Object list (Visual Basic Editor), 946–947
- object methods, 993–1005
 - about Visual Basic, 993
 - executing commands with DoCmd object, 1005
 - using ADO recordsets, 1001–1005
 - working with DAO recordsets, 994–997
- object model hierarchies, 978–987
 - Access, 978–981
 - ADO, 985–987
 - DAO, 981–985
- object shortcuts
 - creating in custom groups, 63–67
 - hiding, 69–72
 - renaming, 70–72
 - revealing hidden, 72–75
- Object Type category (Navigation Pane)
 - adding groups to, 57
 - displaying tables only, 105–106
 - filtering form objects, 114, 115
 - groups included in, 57
 - maximizing search for objects from, 82
 - unable to reorder display, 61
 - viewing objects organized in groups in, 105
- object variables, 991–993
- object-oriented programming, 560–562
- objects. *See also* ActiveX Data Objects (ADO); Data Access Objects (DAO)
 - cutting and moving, 210
 - defined, 99
 - designing tabbed documents for finding other, 86
 - dimmed, 73–74
 - dragging and dropping into custom groups, 66
 - embedding in reports, 744–745
 - filtering
 - by group, 81–82
 - form, 114, 115

objects, filtering, *continued*

- list of Navigation Pane, 49, 50, 52–53
- with Search Bar, 79–80

form, 574–578

importing

- Access, 271–273
- linking vs., 292
- read permission required when, 273
- selecting for import, 272–273

macro actions

- modifying, A115–A117
- opening/closing Access, A102–A104

macro objects, 897

maximizing search for all, 82

Me, 990

members for HTML, 1132

module, 942–943

names

- delimiting for SQL Server, 1460
- preceding with exclamation point, 989–990
- putting in brackets, 372

Navigation Pane

- categories, 53–58
- exploring in, 105
- initial placement in, 62–63
- jumping to from, 46

opening with single-click, 106

propagating changes for table, 204

referencing form and report, 919

relationship among Access, 100–101

renaming, 212

searching for database, 78–82

shortcuts

- creating in custom groups, 63–67
- revealing hidden, 72–75

sorting, 76–78

system

- displaying in Navigation Pane, 1267
- recommended settings for, 1269

types of Access, 99–100

ODBC. *See* Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)

ODBC databases

- exporting data to, A82–A83
- query properties when connecting to, 462

ODBC Driver Manager, 254

ODBC Timeout property, 462

Office. *See* Microsoft Office system

Office Clipboard task pane, 395

OLE Object data type

- about, 158, 160
- changing Attachment data type to, 533
- difficulties with Web applications, 1069

OLE object field

- entering data in, 546
- indexes undefinable using, 189

On Error statement, 1029–1030

OnError macro action

- about, A118
- adding macro error handling with, 914, 915
- specifying macro in same macro object in, 911

one-to-many relationships

- database efficiency and, A28
- defining, 185–186
- linking table fields for, 184

one-to-one relationships, A28

Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)

- about, 253–255
- Access compatibility with, 9
- Access won't use for all file types, 268
- architecture of, 255
- ODBC databases
 - creating data source as link to, 255–259
 - exporting data to, A82–A83
 - query properties when connecting to, 462
 - specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47
 - using with dynamic Web pages, 1159, 1160

Open dialog box

- finding and opening files from, 23
- selecting databases from, 102–103

OpenForm action, 922–923

opening

- Access for first time, 19–20
- Access Options dialog box, 27, 84
- .accfl files, 153
- Collecting Data Using E-Mail Options dialog box, 313
- Contacts.adp project file, 133
- events for form and report, 870–871
- existing databases, 22–25
- Export - SharePoint Site wizard, 1183
- File New Database dialog box, 144
- Form window in Layout view, 563
- Form Wizard, 688–689
- IssuesSample.accdb database, 46
- Navigation Options dialog box, 55–56
- objects

- with macro, A102–A104
- with single- or double-click, 106

property sheets, 116–117, 575

queries in Design view, 112–113

query property sheet, 452

reports in Report view or Print Preview, 746

SQL Server Configuration Manager, 266–267

subdatasheets and filtering, 407

Switchboard Manager, 1307

- Table Analyzer Wizard, 234–235
 - Trust Center, 36, 96
 - OpenRecordset method**
 - parameter settings for, 994–995
 - syntax of, 994
 - operators. *See also specific operators***
 - AND**
 - constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
 - expressing in query designer, A55
 - results using OR vs., 357–359
 - truth tables for, A56
 - arithmetic expression, 365
 - Boolean**
 - as selection criteria, 356
 - truth tables for, A56
 - using in query designer, A55
 - comparison**
 - Between, In, and Like, 360–361
 - criteria selection with AND and OR, 357–360
 - Mod**
 - function of, 365
 - integer as result of operations with, 373
 - OR**
 - constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
 - OR abbreviation vs., 356
 - results using AND vs., 357–359
 - truth tables for, A56
 - order of precedence in expressions, 367
 - symbols for comparison, 169
 - Option Button command, 714**
 - option buttons**
 - about, 526–527
 - setting field's status with, 605–607
 - toggle buttons and check boxes vs., 606
 - Option Explicit statements (VB), 963**
 - option groups**
 - about, 526–527
 - displaying form values in, 714–716
 - Options dialog box. *See also* Access Options dialog box**
 - customizing work with modules in, 948
 - tab options in, 948–950
 - OR operator**
 - constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
 - OR abbreviation vs., 356
 - results using AND vs., 357–359
 - truth tables for, A56
 - Oracle, importing data from, 266–270**
 - ORDER BY clause**
 - overview, A50–A52
 - specifying calculated column alias name with, A62
 - TOP *n* PERCENT clause and, 1510, 1511
 - using column names of clause in UNION queries, A52, A63, A69
 - ordering columns in project queries, 1503–1504**
 - organizing tasks, A11–A13**
 - Orientation property, 463**
 - outer joins, 425–431**
 - avoiding between two tables, 185
 - building simple, 425–426
 - defined, 425
 - finding unmatched, 426–430
 - full, 1502
 - Outlook**
 - Access Data Collection Replies folder in, 331
 - automatic e-mail reply processing, 312–313, 325–326
 - Data Collection Status column, 341
 - filling out HTML forms, 322–325
 - moving HTTP-based messages to Outlook Inbox, 325
 - selecting as source for e-mail address, 315–316
 - output**
 - controlling query, 452–454
 - data as task, A11
 - Output All Fields query property, 452–453**
 - overlying text boxes, 1096**
- ## P
- Package Solution wizard, 1340**
 - packaging and signing database, 1336–1339**
 - Page Header section, 845**
 - Page Index property, 721**
 - page numbers**
 - inserting in controls, 806
 - report, 773–774, 830–833
 - Page Numbers dialog box, 832–833**
 - Page Order dialog box, 721**
 - page orientation**
 - printing reports in landscape or portrait, 751, 752, 755
 - selecting Report Wizard report, 781–782
 - Page property, 832–833**
 - Page Setup dialog box, 751–755**
 - Columns tab, 558, 753–754
 - Page tab, 558, 751–753
 - Print Options tab, 752
 - saving specific printer settings, 753
 - Page tab (Page Setup dialog box), 558, 751–753**
 - pages. *See also* Web pages**
 - Switchboard Manager, 1307
 - Paint, 535**
 - panes. *See also* Navigation Pane**
 - Group, Sort, And Total, 761–769, 818
 - Object Dependencies, 209

panes, *continued*

- query designer, 1497–1498
 - about, 1497–1498
 - diagram, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503
 - grid, 1497, 1500, 1503–1507
 - SQL, 1498

Paradox

- exporting Access data to, A80
- importing files from, 265–266
- linking files to Access databases, 293, 298–299
- specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47

parameter queries

- parameter resolved from value chosen from another form, 1565, 1576
- PARAMETERS declarations in, A52–A54
- prompting users for parameters for, 1572–1573
- setting parameters with Input Parameters property, 1574–1575

parameter settings

- OpenRecordset method, 994–995
- RecordSetObject.Open, 1002–1003

parameters

- adding to application shortcut target file name, 1332
- basing stored procedure filters on, 1493
- declaring as filter for in-line function query, 1515, 1516
- defined, 1005
- descriptive names for functions and stored procedures, 1517
- filtering report on opening using date, 1121–1124
- function and subroutine, 1005
- prompting users to enter, 1572–1573
- setting input, 1561–1565
- setting for parameter query with Input Parameters property, 1574–1575
- SQL and Access equivalent data types for, A53
- using report input, 1572–1577

PARAMETERS declaration, A52–A54**parent tables, 185****parentheses ()**

- adding to expressions, 370
- as characters in format string, 653, 655
- expression evaluation within, 367
- scalar functions in, 1542

Partially Enclosed option (Access Options dialog box), 612**partitioning data in crosstab queries, 447–449****pass-through queries, 463****passwords**

- encrypting database with, 1334–1336
- entering for database with linked SharePoint tables, 1198
- logging in on SharePoint Services Web site, 1213–1214

Paste Table As dialog box, 207**pasting**

- copied data in Datasheet view, 394–396
- copied fields, 223–224
- copied tables, 207
- message box confirming, 396

pencil icon, 390, 1229**percentage sign (%), 654****percentages, calculating grand total using, 840, 843–844****performance**

- effect of linked data on, 293–295
- form fields defined as lookup values, 324
- improving for critical tasks, A29
- indexes and database, 1472
- limiting rows fetched for project forms, 1548–1549
- linked table, 1323
- loading time of form and report modules, 944
- PivotTable and PivotChart, 470
- reconstructing queries for, A66
- reducing network traffic with server filters, 1572
- speeding up code with Me objects, 990
- storing calculated value in table, 1114
- subdatasheet properties with large tables, 179

Performance Analyzer, 1302–1303**period (.)**

- indicating decimal in numbers and currency, 653
- rules for using with names, 990
- separating table and field names with, 372, 373

permissions

- Create Database, 1452
- read, 273
- SharePoint Services lists, 1197

photographs

- deleting and updating image path for, 1070–1071
- displaying in forms, 9
- embedding in reports, 744–745
- working with linked, 1069

PivotChart forms, 730–734

- building, 731–732
- designing, 536–539, 730
- embedding linked PivotChart, 730, 733–734

PivotChart view, 479, 873**PivotCharts. *See also* PivotChart forms**

- adding display labels, 480–483
- building query for report, 860–861
- correcting data field caption for, 482
- defined, 470
- designing, 478–483
- embedding in report, 861–863
- event properties detecting changes to, 870, 878–880
- illustrated, 480, 483
- including axis on, 481

- performance of, 470
- PivotTable design window
 - drop zones, 475, 476
 - illustrated, 474
 - Ribbon tools for, 475–476
- PivotTable view, 873
- PivotTables
 - about, 468–469
 - building query for, 470–473
 - changing field captions for, 477
 - crosstab queries vs., 444, 469–470
 - designing, 473–478
 - event properties detecting changes to, 870, 878–880
 - field list for, 474
 - filtering data in, 470
 - forms using, 536–539, 730
 - performance of, 470
 - setting up queries for, 469–473
- placeholder characters
 - @, 655
 - 0 and # used as, 653
 - choosing input mask, 172
 - rules for filling, 655–656
 - underscore (_) as default, 171
- plus sign (+)
 - adding expressions with, 365
 - as character in format string, 653, 655
 - concatenating project file expressions with, A40
 - expanding subdatabases, 387–390, 461
 - operator precedence for, 367
- polishing applications. *See* finishing touches for applications
- Pop Up property, 672
- Popular category (Access Options dialog box), 87–88
- pop-up forms
 - defining properties for, 672–673
 - synchronizing with another form, 1101–1104
 - working with, 523–524
- portrait orientation for reports, 751, 752
- pound sign (#) wildcard, 169, A49
- precedent tasks, A11
- predicates
 - BETWEEN, A35
 - comparison, A37–A38
 - EXISTS, A38–A39
 - IN, A47–A48
 - LIKE, A48–A49
 - NULL, A50
 - quantified, A54–A55
- prefixes on form names, 525
- presentation (layout) document (.xsl)
 - about, 1237, 1241–1243
 - Report ML version of, 1250, 1252
- presentation layout extension documents (.xslx), 1237, 1243
- Presentation tab (Export XML dialog box), 1248, 1249
- preventing
 - Ctrl+F4 with AutoKeys macro, 1315–1316
 - data modification directly on datasheet, 413
 - design changes in applications, 1311
 - endless loop with Change event, 873
 - forms from opening in Design or Layout view, 671
 - Layout view, 1304
 - Navigation Pane or built-in Ribbon access in runtime mode, 1328–1329
 - special keys use, 1312
 - use of Module and Class Module buttons, 1330
 - user's access to window controls, 675
- previewing
 - forms before printing, 557–558
 - reports
 - before printing, 124–125
 - for sample application, 738
 - table definitions, 199–200
- primary key index, 189, 190
- primary keys
 - artificial, 1071–1072
 - AutoNumber fields as, 549
 - changing, 248–250
 - defined, 99
 - defining
 - for database tables, 174–175, 181, 182
 - for projects, 1470–1471
 - finding in SharePoint list, 1219
 - foreign keys and, 416
 - functional dependence of fields on, A21–A23
 - including in data collection, 310
 - providing tables with unique identifiers, A20–A21
 - query update limitations for, 469
 - setting
 - for imported spreadsheet data, 278–279
 - in Table Analyzer Wizard, 237
 - SharePoint Services and, 1218
 - troubleshooting duplicate, 512
 - value changed in parent table, 185
- Print Options tab (Page Setup dialog box), 752
- Print Preview contextual tab, 739
- Print Preview feature, 737–739
- Print Preview Zoom button, 124
- printer fonts, 649
- printers
 - adjusting default margins automatically, 736
 - saving specific report settings for, 753

printing

- event properties for, 881
- forms, 518, 557–558
- macro actions for data, A105–A106
- mailing labels
 - company and contact, 754
 - with data from multiple tables, 463–468
- reports, 750–755
 - in landscape or portrait orientation, 751, 752, 755
 - previewing first, 124–125, 737–739, 750–751
 - from Relationships window, 188
- table definitions, 199–200

privacy

- Microsoft privacy statement, 19
- options for, 38–39

Privacy Options check box (Trust Center dialog box), 38–39**Privacy Options dialog box, 19–20****Private statement, 972–973****procedural statements**

- Const, 965
- Dim, 966–969
- DoCmd and RunCommand, 1026–1028
- flow-control
 - Call, 1017
 - Do...Loop, 1017–1018
 - For...Next, 1018–1019
 - For Each...Next, 1019–1020
 - GoTo, 1020–1021
 - If...Then...Else, 1021–1022
 - RaiseEvent, 1022–1023
 - Select Case, 1023–1024
 - Stop, 1024
 - While...Wend, 1025
 - With...End, 1025–1026
- functions and subroutines
 - about, 1005
 - Function, 1006–1007
 - Sub, 1007–1009
- Option Explicit, 963
- Property Get, 1010–1012
- Property Let, 1012–1014
- Property Set procedure, 1014–1016
- Set, 991–993

procedural vs. object-oriented programming, 560–562**Procedure list (Visual Basic Editor), 946–947****procedures**

- class module
 - Property Get, 1010–1012
 - Property Let, 1012–1014
 - Property Set, 1014–1016
- compiling errors with procedures within, 947

- examining call sequence for, 959–960
- stored, 1519–1524
 - about SQL, 1493, 1519
 - choosing combo box values resolved with, 1564, 1575–1576
 - defined, 136
 - defining properties for columns, 1523–1524
 - displaying in text editors, 1525
 - filtering, 1493
 - inserting parameters in append values queries, 1520–1522
 - naming parameters for, 1517
 - server filters unavailable for, 1558
- text stored, 1526–1541
 - about, 1526–1527
 - adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535
 - comment blocks in, 1528
 - declaring variables, 1531–1532
 - grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541
 - starting new, 1527–1529
 - testing variables in, 1531, 1532
 - user-defined stored, 1533

process-driven design, A7**processing e-mail replies**

- accepting multiple replies, 314
- allowing multiple rows per reply, 314–315
- automatically in Outlook, 312–313, 325–326
- choosing method for, 331–332
- discarding replies, 314
- manually, 321–322, 341–343
- setting date to stop, 315

processor requirements, 1341**product key for Microsoft Office system, 1342****Products form**

- justified format for, 597
- modifying, 598–601

Project Explorer window (VBE)

- about, 946
- illustrated, 945

project files

- concatenating expressions with plus sign, A40
- wildcard characters for string comparisons in, A49

project forms, 1547–1565

- applying server filters, 1558–1561
- changing Default Max Records property, 1555–1557
- differences in, 1547–1554
- fetching recordsets, 1548
- properties for, 1552–1554
- setting
 - input parameters, 1561–1565
 - options for, 1549–1551

- recordset type, 1554–1555
- similarities with database forms, 1547
- unsupported in Layout view, 1552
- project queries, 1491–1545**
 - building in query designer, 1495–1524
 - adding tables, views, and functions, 1495–1496
 - grid pane of, 1497, 1500, 1503–1507
 - Group By options in, 1506
 - in-line functions, 1513–1519
 - panes in, 1497–1498
 - specifying query properties, 1507
 - SQL pane, 1498
 - stored procedures, 1519–1524
 - types of views created in, 1495
 - using views, 1507–1513
 - working with columns for, 1499–1450
 - working in diagram pane, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503
 - building with text editor, 1524–1525
 - selecting option for, 1524–1525
 - text scalar functions, 1541–1543
 - text stored procedures, 1526–1541
 - text table-valued functions, 1543–1545
 - saving in SQL Server before running, 1510
 - viewing, 10–11, 1492–1494
- project reports, 1567–1577**
 - differences between database and, 1567–1570
 - input parameters, 1572–1577
 - server filters in, 1570–1572
 - setting properties for, 1569–1570
 - similarities between database and, 1567
 - unsupported in Layout view, 1552, 1569
- projects. *See also* .adp files**
 - about, 1447
 - compiling
 - after completing each code section, 950
 - errors with procedures within procedure, 947
 - creating new project file, 1448–1457
 - building new SQL Server database, 1448–1451
 - connecting to existing SQL Server database, 1452–1457
 - errors creating new database, 1452
 - naming SQL Server databases, 1451
 - Navigation Pane for new project, 1457
 - setting up data link properties, 1454–1457
 - creating table in Design view, 1457–1459
 - wizards for .accdb applications unavailable, 1457
 - databases vs., 1450
 - defining check constraints, 1477–1481
 - adding, 1478–1480
 - constructing multiple constraint expressions with, 1481
 - defined, 1477–1478
 - expressions to validate dates, 1481
 - types of constraint expressions, 1481–1482
 - defining columns, 1459–1470
 - adding column definitions, 1465–1467
 - SQL Server column data types, 1461–1464
 - sql_variant data type, 1465
 - understanding column properties, 1467–1470
 - user-defined data types, 1465
 - defining primary key, 1470–1471
 - defining relationships for tables, 1482–1488
 - in Design view, 1482–1485
 - using database diagrams, 1485–1488
 - designing forms for, 1547–1565
 - forms
 - applying server filters, 1558–1561
 - changing Default Max Records property, 1555–1557
 - differences in, 1547–1554
 - fetching recordsets, 1548
 - properties for, 1552–1554
 - setting input parameters, 1561–1565
 - setting options for, 1549–1551
 - setting recordset type, 1554–1555
 - similarities with database forms, 1547
 - unsupported in Layout view, 1552
 - improved reliability of Visual Basic, 950
 - including reference to ADODB or ADOX models in, 987
 - queries in, 1491–1545
 - building in query designer, 1495–1524
 - building with text editor, 1524–1545
 - types of objects used as, 1493
 - viewing, 10–11, 1492–1494
 - working with sample project files, 1494–1495
 - reports, 1567–1577
 - differences between database and, 1567–1570
 - input parameters, 1572–1577
 - server filters in, 1570–1572
 - setting properties for, 1569–1570
 - similarities between database and, 1567
 - unsupported in Layout view, 1552, 1569
 - SQL Server version required for, 1448
 - tables
 - adding sample, 1475–1477
 - exploring, 133–135
 - indexes for, 1471–1475
 - setting design options for, 1488–1490
 - upsizing applications to, 533
- Proofing category (Access Options dialog box), 92**
- properties. *See also* Format property; query properties**
 - Allow Additions, 674, 1554–1555
 - Allow Deletions, 674, 1554–1555
 - Allow Edits, 674, 1554–1555
 - Allow Layout View, 589

properties, *continued*

- Auto Expand, 605
- Auto Resize, 622
- Can Grow, 1119
- Caption, 216, 377, 586, 587
- changing field, 232–233
- control
 - Enabled and Locked, 584–585, 662
 - listed on All tab, 666–669
- customizing query, 452–463
- Cycle, 726, 1080
- Default Max Records, 1550, 1555–1557
- Default View, 746
- defining default template form, 682–683
- displaying
 - project query view, 1510–1513
 - subdatasheet, 388
- Dockable, 946
- effect of Format property on data in underlying table, 654
- event
 - changing data, 871–873
 - detecting focus changes, 874–875
 - detecting form and report filtering, 876
 - detecting PivotTable and PivotChart changes, 870, 878–880
 - detecting timer expiration, 882
 - names of, 870
 - opening and closing forms and reports, 870–871
 - printing, 881
 - trapping errors, 882
- formatting control, 651–661
 - Date/Time formats, 657–660
 - numbers and currency, 652–654
 - text, 655–656
 - Yes/No fields, 660
- forms, 670–680
 - border styles, 675–676
 - controlling filtering and modifications, 673–674
 - defining pop-up or modal, 672–673
 - displaying, 586–587
 - listed on All tab, 676–680
 - preventing user's access to window controls, 675
 - project, 1552–1554
 - restricting views for users, 670–671
 - setting navigation options, 671–672
- HasModule, 944
- Hide Duplicates, 840–841
- Input Mask, 1063
- Input Parameters, 1574–1575
- Link Child Fields, 705, 706
- Link Master Fields, 705, 706

- linking fields with subform control, 705
- Lookup, 240–245
- macros referencing
 - form and report, 919–920
 - form and report control, 920
- making grid dots invisible with Grid X and Grid Y, 587
- Max Records, 462, 1550, 1555
- Min Max Button, 675
- modifying Report Wizard control, 787, 788
- Multi Select, 1084–1085, 1086
- multiple-page forms with Cycle, 726
- ODBC Timeout, 462
- Page, 832–833
- project form, 1552–1554
- project report, 1569–1570
- Record Lock, 462
- Records Selectors, 671
- Recordset, 1104
- Recordset Type, 1554–1555
- report
 - about, 822
 - list of available, 823–830
 - project, 1569–1570
 - property sheet for, 819, 822–823
- Running Sum, 845–848
- section
 - list of available, 820–822
 - viewing, 819
- Server Filter, 1570, 1571
- Server Filter By Form, 1559
- setting
 - field, 161–165, 353–355
 - for form objects, 574–578
 - input parameter, 1562–1563
 - label, 585–586
 - for Multi-Value Lookup Field, 247
 - SharePoint column, 1176, 1177
 - tab's Page Index, 721
 - text box, 584–585
- Show Date Picker, 1063
- sorting number values of Lookup, 381
- Source Connect Str, 462
- Source Database, 462
- specifying query, 1507
- SQL Server table column, 1467–1470
- Subdatasheet, 178
- tab control, 723
- Tab Index, 663
- Top Values, 453–454
- Unique Records, 454–458
- Unique Values, 454–458
- Validation Rule and Validation Text, 670

- viewing those created by Combo Box Wizard, 604–605
 - Properties dialog box**
 - adding detail to PivotCharts, 480–482
 - Check Constraints tab, 1478
 - Hidden check box in, 70, 75
 - property settings for application shortcut, 1331–1332, 1334
 - Properties window**
 - Function Parameters tab, 1518, 1519
 - illustrated, 1511
 - In-Line Function tab, 1518
 - options on View tab for, 1512–1513
 - Stored Procedures tab, 1523–1524
 - Properties window (Visual Basic Editor), 945, 946**
 - Property Get procedure, 1010–1012**
 - Property Let procedure, 1012–1014**
 - Property Set procedure, 1014–1016**
 - property sheet**
 - All tab
 - listing of control properties, 666–669
 - listing of form properties, 676–680
 - assigning alias to query fields with, 496, 497
 - illustrated, 575
 - listed embedded macros in events, 902
 - opening
 - and closing in Design view, 576
 - and customizing, 116–117
 - replacing field list with, 565
 - report, 819, 822–823
 - setting for, 123
 - resizing controls using, 633
 - section, 819
 - setting form's object properties from, 574–578
 - tabs on, 575–576
 - Property Sheet button, 176, 476**
 - Property statement, 947**
 - protocols**
 - TCP/IP, 1137
 - types of network, 1138
 - Public statement, 973–974**
 - public variables and constants, 963–964**
 - Publish To Web Server dialog box, 1210, 1221, 1222**
 - publishing data on Web. *See also* HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)**
 - creating static HTML documents, 1140–1158
 - customizing appearance, 1143–1148
 - designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151
 - exporting database as HTML file, 1140–1143
 - generating HTML page from Access report, 1151–1154
 - development tools required for, 1127–1128
 - dynamic Web pages, 1158–1161
 - delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160
 - processing live data with HTML forms, 1160
 - using ASP for fetching data on, 1158
 - using Visual Studio .NET and ASP.NET, 1160–1161
 - sharing data with SharePoint Services, 1161–1163
 - static Web pages
 - understanding, 1137–1139
 - viewing, 1139–1140
 - XML overview, 1135–1137
 - publishing database to SharePoint site, 1208–1211**
 - about, 1208
 - .accdb file format required, 1210
 - downloading SharePoint databases to trusted locations, 1225
 - moving vs., 1207
 - publishing changes to migrated database, 1217
 - republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
 - selecting and publishing file, 1210–1211
 - purchasing digital certificates, 1336**
- Q**
- quantified predicate, A54–A55**
 - queries, 347–514. *See also* action queries; in-line functions; project queries; stored procedures**
 - about, 4, 99
 - action, 347, A33, A71
 - adding records in Datasheet view, 391
 - advantages of, 15–16
 - aggregate, 1505
 - append, 502–507
 - appending data with stored procedures, 1519–1522
 - command on Design contextual tab for, 488
 - creating, 503–506
 - defined, 485
 - icon for, 490
 - make-table vs., 502
 - running, 506–507
 - SQL overview for, A73–A75
 - append values
 - inserting parameters in, 1520–1522
 - syntax of, 1519–1520
 - assigning data types for parameters, 451
 - avoiding joins between, 185
 - Between, In, and Like comparison operators in, 360–361
 - building
 - for complex reports, 812–813
 - query on, 421–424
 - report, 757–759
 - subreport, 855
 - for table modified in Table Analyzer Wizard, 238–239
 - ways to create, 348

queries, *continued*

checking

- field properties in Datasheet view, 354
- new field validation rules, 381-382

choosing data from single table, 349-351

complex expressions for simple, 371-376

controlling output of, 452-454

criteria

- dates and times in, 356-357
- entering selection, 355-356
- excluding requests by date, 1109
- for fields in, 355-356
- selecting with AND and OR, 357-360
- specifying sorting, 380

crosstab, 442-449

- creating, 442-447
- Design view of, 442, 443
- displaying multiple-value fields in, 444
- filling empty cells with zero values, 446-447
- function of, 442
- GROUP BY clauses in, A44-A45
- partitioning data in, 447-449
- pivoting with PivotTable vs., 444, 469-470
- Query Wizard for creating, 431
- sample results desired from, 442, 443
- sort order for columns in, 445-446
- specifying column headings for, 445-446
- unable to change data in, 468
- viewing design in Datasheet view, 445

customizing properties, 452-463

data definition, 463

data selection and editing in Datasheet view, 393

defined in SQL, 417

delete, 510-511

- about, 485
- backing up before running, 510
- command on Design contextual tab for, 488
- confirming actions of, 510
- deleting inactive data with, 510-511
- icon for, 490
- testing rows affected by, 507-510
- using, 510

delivering dynamic results on Web page, 1158-1160

designating as source for embedded subform, 706-707

designing

- custom query by form, 1086-1093
- PivotChart form, 731-732, 860-861

ensuring data integrity in, 417-419

exporting XML, 1246-1250

expressions in, 362-370

field names in, 377-378

field property assignments in, 353-355

finding

- records across date spans, 428
- unmatched outer joins, 426-430

functions in, 136-137

including parameters in, 449-452

limitations updating fields in, 468-469

limiting returned records, 410

listing by object type, 110-111

looking up values with combo box, 602-604

macro actions executing, A106-A107

make-table, 495-502

- append vs., 502
- assigning alias to field lists in, 496, 497
- command on Design contextual tab for, 488
- converting from select query, 500
- creating, 496-500
- defined, 485
- icon for, 490
- limitations of, 501
- running, 500-502
- SELECT...INTO statements as, A75-A76
- verifying data in, 496

many-to-one, 687-688

modifying, 212

opening in Design view, 112-113, 349, 351

outer joins for, 425-426

Output All Fields property, 452-453

parameter, 1565

pass-through, 463

placing all fields in many-to-one form, 688-691

preventing data modification of, 413

processing data with, 10-11

project, 1491-1545

- building in query designer, 1495-1524
- building with text editor, 1524-1545
- viewing, 10-11, 1492-1494

record indicators in Datasheet view, 390

relationships

- matching unnecessary for joined, 416
- to other Access objects, 101
- to tables and forms, 560
- viewing those defined for, 187

restricting user datasheet, 179

returning unique records and values for, 454-458

row source, 1054-1055

saving complex results in temporary table, 496

select, 347

selecting

- report fields from multiple, 778
- table containing e-mail address, 332-333

setting

- datasheet format for in Datasheet view, 1145

- field properties for, 353–355
- sorting recordsets by fields, 421
- specifying
 - data source for embedded subforms, 693–696
 - fields in, 351–353
- subdatasheets in, 387–390
- testing new table validation rules, 382–384
- totals, 435–449
 - defining aggregate functions in, 435–436, 437
 - filtering before grouping records with, 440–441
 - filtering groups of totals after calculating, 441–442
 - partitioning data in, 447
 - sorting sequence of, 439
 - unable to change data in, 468
 - uses for, 435
- union, 463–468
 - building in SQL view, 463–468
 - illustrated, 468
 - updates disallowed for, 469
 - using column names in ORDER BY clause of, A52, A63, A69
 - viewing in Datasheet view, 465
- update, 486–495
 - backing up data before using, 489
 - command on Design contextual tab for, 488
 - confirmation dialog boxes with, 489, 491
 - converting select query to, 488
 - defined, 485
 - defining generic parameters for, 495
 - expressions in, 489
 - icon for, 490
 - illustrated, 488
 - multiple tables or queries creating, 493–495
 - running, 489–491
 - updating multiple fields, 491–493
 - using select query to test data updates, 486–487
- working
 - in Datasheet view, 113–114, 384–412
 - with recordset data, 560
- Queries object type, 48
- Query Builder, 576–578
- Query Design button, 348, 415
- query designer, 1495–1424. *See also* complex queries; simple queries
 - about SQL built in, 463
 - adding tables, views, and functions, 1495–1496
 - Boolean operators in, A55
 - building
 - database and project queries in, 1491
 - simple queries with, 348
 - SQL statements from text editor, 1525–1526
 - defining Lookup properties for desktop database queries, 353
 - editing SQL statements in, 1526
 - ensuring correct table used in, 415
 - Group By options in, 1506
 - in-line functions, 1513–1519
 - available properties for, 1517–1519
 - building, 1514–1516
 - constructing to create updatable recordsets, 1514
 - declaring parameter to filter, 1515, 1516
 - defined, 1493
 - reasons for using, 1513
 - testing, 1516–1517
 - joins
 - adding lines when building query on query, 423
 - working with, 419
 - opening, 348
 - panes of
 - about, 1497–1498
 - diagram, 1497, 1499, 1500–1503
 - grid, 1497, 1500, 1503–1507
 - SQL, 1498
 - queries converted into SQL by, 417
 - reviewing query in SQL view, 464
 - specifying brackets around field names for database queries, 362
 - stored procedures, 1519–1524
 - about SQL, 1493, 1519
 - defining properties for columns, 1523–1524
 - inserting parameters in append values queries, 1520–1522
 - re-creating stored procedure from, 1529–1530
 - using append and append values queries, 1519
 - views
 - types created in, 1495
 - using, 1507–1513
 - working with columns for, 1499–1450
 - query parameters
 - assigning data types for, 451
 - brackets around, 449
 - defining generically for update queries, 495
 - deleting rows by date, 451
 - formats for date parameters, 508
 - including in queries, 449–452
- Query Parameters dialog box, 451
- query properties, 452–463
 - cycling through values of, 461
 - Max Records, 462
 - ODBC Timeout, 462
 - Output All Fields, 452–453
 - predefining subdatasheets with, 458–462
 - Record Lock, 462

query properties, *continued*

- Source Connect Str, 462
- Source Database, 462
- Subdatasheet Height, 460
- Top Values, 453–454
- Unique Records, 454–458
- Unique Values, 454–458, 469
- viewing in Query window, 452, 453

Query Type group (Design contextual tab), 488, 509

Query window

- changing font size for, 467
- Design view for, 351
- opening query property sheet in, 452, 453

Query Wizard

- building crosstab queries from, 431
- creating complex queries in, 431–434
- Find Unmatched, 432–434
- selecting, 432

Query Wizard button, 348, 1524

QueryDefs collection, 984

question mark (?) wildcard, 169, A49

Quick Access Toolbar, 27–33

adding

- command from Ribbon to, 34
- macros to, 30–31
- separators between commands, 33
- Customize category settings for, 28–29, 94
- Database Tools tab, 24, 44–45
- default and custom commands on, 27–30
- illustrated, 28
- removing items from, 28–29, 33, 34
- restoring default settings for, 33
- revising order of commands and macros on, 32
- undo feature for, 210

quick create commands

forms

- building with wizard or commands, 593
- creating data entry form, 590–591
- creating split form, 590–591
- Report, 775–777

quick create table templates, 152

Quit method, 1328

R

RaiseEvent statement, 1022–1023

randomly loading data, 1030–1044

- building procedure to, 1030–1032
- code listing, 1032–1040
- explanation of code listing, 1041–1044

rbnCSD ribbon code listing, 1292–1296

RDBMS (relational database management system)

- Access as, 6–13

data manipulation in, 9–11

data sharing and control in, 12–13

database capabilities of, 5–6

defined, 4

sequence of fields in databases, 217

read permissions, 273

read-only database, 1224

read-only forms, 1554–1555

Ready To Install page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1355–1356

recipients

- customizing data collection messages for, 318–319, 334–335
- filling out HTML forms, 322–325
- inserting data in InfoPath forms, 337–341
- instructing to click Reply, 319
- selecting e-mail, 316–318, 320–321

Reconnect function, 1323

record indicators in Datasheet view, 390

Record Lock property, 462

record locking settings, 294, 295

Record Number box, 385

record sources

- binding to table, 609–610
- building multiple-table query to serve as, 686–688
- choosing query used as report's, 1572
- creating query on form property's, 576–578
- defined, 566
- in-line functions as report, 1513
- query views as, 1507
- selecting report's, 791–792
- specifying, 566–567
- subquery providing search criteria from underlying, 1093
- using field in calculations from specified report, 834

records

about, 99

action query errors with locked, 512

adding

- in forms, 543–548
- totals to report, 804–807

design concept of, A17

form properties controlling addition of, 673–674

keyboard shortcuts for, 542–543

linking between forms and subforms, 548

locking those retrieved in queries, 462

project rows vs., 1458

querying across date spans, 428

receiving new data via e-mail, 309, 329

size limitations for, 201

verifying prerequisite before saving, 1075–1077

Records Selectors property, 671–672

Recordset object variable, 994–997

Recordset property, 1104

Recordset Type property, 1554–1555

RecordSetObject.Open parameter settings, 1002–1003

recordsets

adding records at end of edited, 544–545

ADO, 1001–1005

deleting rows in, 1004

difficulties using, 982

inserting rows in, 1005

moving to specific records, 1003

opening, 1001

RecordSetObject.Open parameter settings,
1002–1003

searching and finding rows in, 1003–1004

changing field names for, 377–378

choosing type of project query for updatable, 1514

conserving server resources when downloading, 1551

DAO, 994–997

defined, 347, 560, 686

dynaset and table, 996

fetching partial sets for project report, 1568

filling empty cells with zero values, 446–447

filtering before grouping with totals queries, 440–441

finding unmatched records, 426–430, 432–434

inserting row in, 997

limiting returned records for queries, 410

locating rows in form, 1104

methods of fetching project form, 1548

navigation buttons in Datasheet view, 386

organizing with query designer views, 1507

relative record number of, 384

removing with delete queries, 507–511

returning unique records and values for queries,
454–458

sorting rows in, 378–380, 421

specifying fields for, 351–353

using server filters for, 1558

using updatable, 1554–1555

viewing joined data from two tables, 417–419

recovering deleted macros, 907

Rectangle tool, 642

rectangles, 644–645

Recycle Bin, 1179–1182, 1197

ReDim statement, 974–975

referencing

collections, 987–989, 991

controls for forms and reports, 920

methods, in variables created by macro, 991

objects

form and report objects, 919

in variables created by macro, 991

within collections, 987–988

properties, 987–989

form and report, 919–920

in variables created by macro, 991

subforms and subreports, 920–921

temporary variables, 991

referential integrity

defining relationships for project tables, 1482–1488

enforcing in relationships, 184, 185

ensuring business rules in queries for, 417–419

maintaining application's data integrity, 413

not enforced by SharePoint Services, 1195

presetting field values to ensure data integrity, 935–938

testing code for related records when deleting record,
1074–1075

refining application design, A6

Refresh Pivot button, 476

Registration Information page (Microsoft SQL Server
Installation Wizard), 1352–1353

relation, 5

relational database management system. *See* RDBMS
(relational database management system)

relational databases, 4–5

relationships

among database tasks, A13

efficiency in database, A27–A28

creating linking tables, A28

foreign keys, A27

one-to-many and one-to-one, A28

many-to-many

about, 5

defining linking table to create, 1077–1078

embedding subforms to reflect, 693

order-entry examples demonstrating, A8

one-to-many

database efficiency and, A28

defining, 185–186

linking table fields for, 184

between tables, 181–188

avoiding outer joins between two tables, 185

creating relationship on multiple fields, 186–187

defining fields linking tables, 181–183

defining for project tables, 1482–1488

deleting, 210

editing from Design contextual tab, 184

setting up first relationship, 183–184

testing code for related records when deleting record,
1074–1075

undoing deleted, 211

viewing, 187

Relationships tab (Properties dialog box), 1483–1485

Relationships window

- database diagrams vs., 1485
- embedding subforms to reflect many-to-many relationships, 693
- illustrated, 187
- opening tables in Design view in, 188
- printing reports from, 188

relative record number, 384

Relink Lists To New Site dialog box, 1197

relinking tables when going back online, 1232–1233

Remove button, 633

removing

- automatic sorting of Navigation Pane objects, 78
- control layouts, 800
- database passwords, 1335
- form control layouts, 598–599, 632–635, 640–642
- form grid dots, 564–565
- items from Quick Access Toolbar, 28–29, 33, 34
- joins for project query tables, 1501
- temporary variables, 909–910, 991
- trusted publishers, 37

renaming

- field names in queries, 419
- navigation groups, 59, 60
- object shortcuts, 70–72
- objects with macro action, A116
- tables, 211–212
- template fields, 154

replacing data in Datasheet view, 394

replies. *See* processing e-mail replies

Report command, 775–777

Report Design button, 759–760

Report Design Tools collection, 759, 761

Report Design Tools contextual tab, 121–122, 761

report footers. *See* footers

report modules

- breakpoints ineffective if not open in Visual Basic Editor, 957
- module objects vs., 944

report properties

- about, 822
- list of available, 823–830
- property sheet for, 819, 822–823
- rules for referencing, 919–920

report sections. *See* section properties

Report view, 745–750

- about, 127–128, 745–746
- defining Default View property to open reports in, 746
- filtering data in, 747–748
- properties
 - for detecting filters applied to reports, 876
 - for trapped keyboard and mouse events, 876–878

responding to control events in, 749–750

Report window

designing report in, 759–761

Layout view for, 125–127

Print Preview for, 124–125

Report view for, 127–128

Report Wizard, 777–790

about, 777

adding

- date and time to reports in, 830–831
- grouping levels and intervals, 779–780
- report title, 782–783

choosing fields from multiple tables or queries, 778

creating structure for complex reports in, 813–815

illustrated, 778, 779

layout style and page orientation, 781–782

modifying reports from, 784–790

- accenting detail with background color, 788–789
- changing control properties, 787, 788
- resizing columns and fields, 784–785, 786
- resizing and repositioning controls, 785–787

previewing report in, 783–784

selecting fields, 778

specifying sorting criteria, 780, 781

summary options for, 780–781

verifying grouping criteria, 779

ReportML style specification, 1250, 1252**reports**

about, 120–121

Access architecture and, 980

advanced design, 811–863

- adding PivotChart to report, 860–863
- adding print date and page numbers, 830–833
- adding values across group, 837–838
- calculating percentages, 840, 843–844
- calculating totals on expressions, 838
- concatenating text strings, 841–842
- conditional formatting, 848–851
- creating and embedding subreport, 741–744, 851–859
- creating grand total, 839–840
- defining grouping and sorting criteria, 816–818
- hiding redundant values, 840–841, 842
- numbering report lines, 845–848
- performing calculations on detail line, 833–837
- queries for complex reports, 812–813
- report properties, 822–830
- section properties, 819–822
- structuring basics in Report Wizard, 813–815

automating, 1114–1124

- drawing border on report, 1118–1121
- dynamically filtering on opening, 1121–1124
- using up partial page of mailing labels, 1115–1118

- blank, 760
- building from scratch
 - adding column labels, 770-771
 - adding new grouping level on grid, 764
 - changing grouping and sorting priorities, 768-769
 - choosing to use or omit headers, 767
 - data types unavailable in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
 - defining groupings, 761, 762-763
 - designing, 759-760
 - entering titles, 766-767
 - formatting title for, 769
 - group interval options, 765-766
 - grouping specifications and data types, 765
 - line control in, 771, 773
 - opening Group, Sort, And Total pane for, 761-762
 - page numbers for, 773-774
 - printing options, 768
 - selecting totals options in, 766
 - sizing text box controls for, 772-773
 - sort order and options in, 764-765
 - using or omitting footers, 767-768
- building query for, 757-759
- canceling moves in large, 740
- changing definition in Design view, 121-124
- creating snapshot data for, A31
- customizing width and height, 753-754
- defined, 100
- Detail section of
 - embedding PivotChart in, 861-863
 - expression values used with conditional formatting, 849
 - illustrated, 740
 - numbering lines in, 846-848
 - performing calculations on, 834-837
- events
 - detecting applied filters, 876
 - opening and closing, 870-871
 - trapped keyboard and mouse, 876-878
- exporting XML, 1250-1254
- filtering to link to, 1099-1101
- generating HTML Web page from, 1151-1154
 - creating template for report, 1151-1152
- headers, footers, and groups in, 739-741
- interactive Report view for, 127-128, 745-750
- Layout view, 790-809
 - adding totals to records, 804-807
 - applying AutoFormat, 807-809
 - grouping and sorting in, 792-796
 - modifying Report Wizard reports in, 784-790
 - selecting record source, 791-792
 - starting with blank report, 790-792
 - usefulness of, 797
 - working with control layouts, 797-804
- look of printed sample, 736
- modifying, 212
- objects embedded in, 744-745
- opening
 - from Navigation Pane, 736, 737
 - in Report view or Print Preview, 746
- printing, 750-755
 - adjusting Page Setup options, 751-755
 - previewing before, 124-125, 738, 750-751
- project, 1567-1577
 - differences between database and, 1567-1570
 - input parameters, 1572-1577
 - server filters in, 1570-1572
 - setting properties for, 1569-1570
 - similarities between database and, 1567
 - unsupported in Layout view, 1552, 1569
- property sheets for, 123, 819
- quick, 775-777
- reducing redundancy in, 833
- relationship to other Access objects, 100-101
- Report Wizard, 777-790
 - adding date and time, 830-831
 - adding grouping levels and intervals, 779-780
 - adding report title, 782-783
 - choosing fields from multiple tables or queries, 778
 - illustrated, 778, 779
 - layout style and page orientation, 781-782
 - modifying reports from, 784-790
 - previewing report in, 783-784
 - selecting fields, 778
 - sorting criteria, 780, 781
 - summary options for, 780-781
 - verifying grouping criteria, 779
- subreports, 741-744
- using, 735-736
- viewing
 - in Layout view, 125-127
 - in Print Preview, 736, 737-739
- Visual Basic report modules, 944
- Reports collections. *See also* reports
 - referencing objects in, 987-988
- Reports object type, 48
- republishing shared databases after changing, 1207, 1219-1222
- Require Variable Declaration check box (Options dialog box), 963
- Required field property messages, 168
- resending data collection messages, 343-345

resizing

controls

in Layout view, 631–632

using property sheet, 633

Report Wizard columns and fields in Layout view, 784–785, 786

Report Wizard controls and repositioning, 785–787
text box controls in Layout view, 797–798

Resolve Conflicts dialog box, 1231–1232

resolving changes in shared data, 1231

Resources category (Access Options dialog box), 96–97

restoring

defaults for Quick Access Toolbar, 33

Hourglass after running macros, 897

Recycle Bin items, 1179–1182

Ribbon, 45

rows replaced in error, 224

Retry All My Changes button, 1232

RETURN statements, 1529, 1531

return values for MsgBox function, 933

reverse order sorting, 403

reversing changes to table design, 234

reviewing application design, A6

Ribbon, 41–45. *See also* Design contextual tab; External

Data tab

adding command to Quick Access Toolbar from, 34

collapsing, 45

contextual tabs

about, 41

adding built-in groups to, 1276–1279

creating custom, 1274–1275

found on Form Design Tools, 567

Print Preview, 739

Report Design Tools, 121–122, 761

setting focus to, 1301–1302

Controls group

border formatting with, 583–584

buttons on, 568–572, 645–646

illustrated, 568–572, 761

Option Button command, 714

placing bound controls on form from field list, 573–574

customizing, 1266–1279, 1283–1302

adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279

building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271

creating USysRibbons table, 1266–1269

creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297

disabling unused tabs, buttons, and groups, 1283–1284

displaying errors, 1274

dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299

hiding existing elements, 1271–1272

hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301

loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300

loading into Access data projects, 1286

loading XML for, 1284–1287

setting focus to tab, 1301–1302

tabs, 1274–1275

testing, 1270, 1272–1273

using RibbonX attributes, 1287–1296

XML code listing for, 1292–1296

getting accustomed to, 21

illustrated, 24, 41

main tabs, 41

Create, 24, 42–43

Database Tools, 24, 44–45

displaying ScreenTips for, 104

External Data, 24, 43–44

Home, 24, 42

not used in Visual Basic Editor, 945

PivotTable tools on, 475–476

quick create commands on, 590

sort buttons in Datasheet view, 402

unable to select from when modal form displayed, 673

used with sample reports, 811

Rich Text fields, 324

Rich Text Format support for SharePoint text fields, 1170–1171

right arrow button (>), 593

Right Arrow key, 392

right joins, 1502

RIGHT [OUTER] JOIN statement, A42

ROLLBACK TRANSACTION statements, 1535

Row Fields drop zone, 474

row selector, 385

row source queries, 1054–1055

@@ROWCOUNT system variable, 1531, 1532, 1534, 1535

rows

about, 99

adding to project query views, 1510

appending with INSERT statement, A73–A75

copying and pasting multiple, 224

counting with stored procedures, 1524

Datasheet view of, 385

deleting

datasheet, 396

and updating ADO recordset, 1004

entering data in table, 150

extra table, 111

filtering in Filter window, 408–410

finding differences in, 369–370

- inserting, 220–222
 - in ADO recordset, 1005
 - on InfoPath forms, 338
 - new index, 190
- limiting returned records for queries, 410, 462
- locating rows in form recordset, 1104
- moving with mouse, 218
- multiple rows per e-mail replies, 314–315
- project, 1458
- queries for deleting, 485, 507–511
- searching for in ADO recordset, 1003–1004
- selecting
 - for copying or cutting, 395
 - to view property settings, 107–108
- sorting
 - changing sequence by cutting or, 396
 - in recordsets, 378–380
- updating with query, 486–495
- ruler, 633
- rules. *See also* validation rules
 - breaking design, A28–A31
 - capturing point-in-time data, A29–A31
 - creating report snapshot data, A31
 - improving performance of critical tasks, A29
- business
 - ensuring in queries for data integrity, 417–419
 - verifying prerequisite data to satisfy, 1075–1077
- SQL Server Rules for Identifiers, 1460
- table design, A27
- Run All From My Computer option (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1344
- RunCommand method, 1027
- RunMacro command, 939
- Running Sum property, 845–848
- runtime mode execution, 1328–1329

S

- sample files
 - location of, 23, 103
 - modifying table design for, 204
 - working with project files, 1494–1495
- sample reports
 - look of printed, 736
 - previewing, 738
- SampleMacro macro object, 129
- Save As dialog box, 151, 893–894
- Save button, 151
- saving
 - changes to databases, 205
 - complex query results in temporary table, 496
 - database diagrams, 1488
 - embedded macros with form or report control, 904
 - filters, 412
 - import steps for Get External Data - SharePoint Site wizard, 1189–1190
 - macros, 893–894
 - new or retaining old data for subdatasheets, 389
 - objects with macro action, A116
 - project queries in SQL Server before running, 1510
 - specific printer settings for reports, 753
 - tables, 151
 - template files in appropriate folders, 197–199
- scalar functions
 - defined, 1493
 - including in parentheses, 1542
 - table-valued functions vs., 1544
 - text table-valued vs., 1543
- schema documents (.xsd)
 - about, 1237, 1239–1241
 - importing into Access, 1255
- Schema tab (Export XML dialog box), 1247, 1248, 1249
- scientific notation, 654
- scope of variables and constants, 963–964
- screen fonts, 649
- Screen object of Access Application object, 979, 980
- screen resolution
 - effect on alignment commands, 611
 - Print Preview display and, 737
- ScreenTips
 - displaying, 104
 - hyperlink, 397, 398, 547
 - viewing filter icons with, 408
- scripts
 - about, 1128
 - ASP script generated in VBScript, 1158
 - browsers executing on client computers, 1138
- scroll bars
 - combo box, 244
 - form, 661
- Scroll Bars property, 671–672
- scrolling through Ribbon tabs, 41
- SDI. *See* single-document interface (SDI)
- Search Bar
 - filtering objects with, 79–80
 - finding database objects from, 78–82
- Search box, 553–554
- Search Fields As Formatted check box (Find And Replace dialog box), 552, 553
- Search-Condition clause, A55–A57
- searching
 - ADO recordset for rows, 1003–1004
 - data
 - with Find and Replace, 405–406
 - with macro actions, A111

searching, data, *continued*

- using wildcards, 406
- database objects, 78–82
- forms, 551–554
- maximizing search for all objects, 82
- for states, 410–411

secondary forms

- opening with macro, 921–924
- synchronizing with macro, 924–928

section properties. *See also* Detail section

- list of available, 820–822
- property sheet for, 819
- viewing, 819

security. *See also* trusted locations

- allowing blocked content in browsers, 1245
- blocking harmful content, 35–36
- database encryption and, 1336
- digital certificates
 - packaging signed database with, 1337
 - purchasing, 1336
 - self-signing, 1337
- digital signatures
 - about files with, 1336
 - omitted from sample databases, 35
 - responding to security notice about, 1338–1339
 - signing .accdb files, 1338
- improving SQL Server 2005, 1356
- linked data, 293
- Message Bar alerts for, 35
- SQL Server connections
 - establishing, 1450–1451
 - using Windows NT Integrated Security, 1455
- Trust Center, 34–35

SELECT...INTO statement (make-table query), A75–A76

Select Case statement, 1023–1024

Select Certificate dialog box, 1337

SELECT clause, 464

Select Data Source dialog box, 267–268

Select Field box (Group, Sort, And Total pane), 763

select queries

- action queries distinguished from, 490
- converting
 - fields discarded while, 490
 - to make-table query, 500
 - to update query, 488
- defined, 347
- testing
 - data updates with, 486–487
 - rows affected by delete query with, 507–510
- text table-valued functions and, 1543
- update limitations for fields in, 468–469
- verifying data for make-table queries with, 496

Select SQL Server Database File dialog box, 1455

SELECT statements

- about, A33, A34
- assigning variables with, 1531
- DISTINCTROW clauses in, A34, A58–A59, A65
- order of major clauses in, A33
- overview of, A57–A63
- syntax variants for, A34

Selected Fields list, copying fields to, 593

selecting

- data, 1082–1097
 - by filtering, 407–408
 - choosing all controls in control layout, 639
 - filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
 - multiple fields, 579
 - multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
 - noncontiguous, 579, 1082–1086
 - to perform tasks, A11
 - providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
 - selecting all controls in area, 588, 600
 - from summary list, 1094–1095
- fields, 578
 - all in list, 578
 - all in table, 352, 353
 - in Form Wizard, 593–594
 - multiple, 579
 - as report group, 762–763
 - in Report Wizard, 778
 - as source for stored e-mail address, 315–316

selection criteria

- avoiding keywords as, 356
- Boolean operators as, 356
- building date/time, 356–357
- common mistakes using compound, 359
- entering for queries, 355–356
- excluding query requests by date, 1109

self-signing certificates, 1337

SendKeys macro actions, A110

<Separator> option, 33

Server Filter By Form property, 1559

Server Filter property, 1570, 1571

server filters, 1558–1561

- about, 1558
- example using report, 1570–1572
- getting help constructing, 1559
- input parameters vs., 572, 1572
- reducing network traffic with, 1572
- using
 - in embedded subforms and subreports, 1577
 - project report, 1570
 - separate queries with filters vs., 1563

servers

- attaching/detaching project files to local, 1494–1495
- choosing server connections, 1450–1451, 1454
- conserving resources when downloading recordsets, 1551
- embedded subform and subreport design for efficiency, 1577
- errors connecting to SQL Server, 1452

server-side data-only files

- designing data fetching for, 1321
- setting up applications with, 1319, 1320
- splitting tables to create, 1320–1323

Service Packs

- Access bug fixes
 - error message when saving in-line function, 1516
 - incorrect positioning of fields on form grid, 627
 - mailto:* protocol prefix, 1062
 - missing background images in Form Wizard, 595, 690
 - opening properties affecting color from Custom Properties dialog box, 729
- operating system-required, 1341
- required for SQL Server 2005 Express Edition, 258

Set Control Defaults button, 680–681**Set Database Password dialog box, 1335****Set Hyperlink ScreenTip dialog box, 547****Set Maximum Record Count button, 1548, 1549, 1568****Set Maximum Record Count dialog box, 1549****SET NOCOUNT ON statement, 1528, 1529****SET statements (SQL), 1532****Set statements (Visual Basic), 991–993****Set Unique Identifier button (Table Analyzer Wizard), 237****Setup Progress page (Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard), 1356–1357****SharePoint List button, 1183, 1184, 1187, 1203, 1204****SharePoint Services. *See* Windows SharePoint Services (version 3)****SharePoint List group (Access), 1206****sharing data. *See also* publishing data on Web; publishing database to SharePoint site**

- Access for, 12–13
- using databases for, 16

Shift key, 643**shortcut menus**

- accessing table's commands from, 106–107
- displaying single Navigation Pane categories with, 81

Shortcut tab (Properties dialog box), 1331, 1332**shortcuts. *See also* keyboard shortcuts**

- application, 1331–1334
 - adding parameters to target file name, 1332

command-line options for, 1333–1334**properties for, 1331–1332, 1334****object**

- creating and grouping, 63–67
- hiding and renaming, 69–72
- renaming, 70–72
- revealing hidden, 72–75

Show Add-In User Interface Errors check box (Access Options dialog box), 1274**Show As button, 476****Show Date Picker property, 1063****Show Details button, 476****Show System Objects check box (Navigation Options dialog box), 1267, 1269****Show Table dialog box, 183, 350****Show Top/Bottom button, 475****showing. *See* displaying****Shutter Bar Open/Close button, 47****simple input form, 578–589**

- customizing colors and reviewing design, 587–589
- dragging multiple fields to, 578–580
- font options for, 582–583
- label properties for, 585–586
- moving and sizing controls, 580–581
- setting and displaying properties of, 586–587
- text box properties for, 584–585

simple queries, 347–412

- adding records in Datasheet view, 391
- assigning field properties, 353–355
 - Between, In, and Like comparison operators in, 360–361
- building complex expressions for, 371–376
- criteria selection with AND and OR, 357–360
- data selection
 - and editing in Datasheet view, 393
 - from single table, 349–351
- dates and times in selection criteria, 356–357
- entering selection criteria, 355–356
- expressions in, 362–370
- field names in, 377–378
- limiting returned records, 410
- methods of building, 348
- record indicators in Datasheet view, 390
- specifying
 - fields, 351–353
 - sorting criteria, 380
- subdatasheets in, 387–390
- validation rules
 - checking new field, 381–382
 - testing new table, 382–384
- working in Datasheet view, 384–412

simple reports

- adding new grouping level on grid, 764
- changing grouping and sorting priorities, 768–769
- choosing to use or omit headers, 767
- column labels for, 770–771
- data types unavailable in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 763
- defining groupings, 761, 762–763
- designing, 759–760
- group interval options, 765–766
- line control in, 771, 773
- opening Group, Sort, And Total pane for, 761–762
- page numbers for, 773–774
- printing options, 768
- selecting totals options in, 766
- sizing text box controls for, 772–773
- sort order and options in, 764–765
- titles
 - entering, 766–767
 - formatting, 769
- using or omitting footers, 767–768
- simplifying data input, 601–607**
 - toggle buttons, check boxes, and option buttons, 605–607
 - using combo and list boxes, 601–605
- single quotation marks (' '), 362**
- single stepping through macros**
 - disabling, 895
 - enabling, 894
 - limited debugging with, 951
- single-document interface (SDI), 83–86**
 - about, 84
 - defined, 83
- single-field indexes, 188–189**
- Size To Fit command**
 - limitations of, 614
 - sizing controls with, 612–616
- sizing**
 - combo box columns, 603
 - controls and moving, 580–581
 - controls to fit form content, 612–616
 - Form window to fit form with Auto Resize property, 622
 - individual controls to fit content, 613
 - subform controls, 704
 - text box controls for reports, 772–773
- smart tags**
 - adding to controls, 663–665
 - defined, 663
 - turning off warning, 771
- Smart Tags dialog box, 665**
- Smart Tags field property, 165**
- SMTP/POP3 service, 1341**
- Snap To Grid (Control Layout group), 617–620**

- snapshot data for reports, A31**
- Snapshot Recordset Type property, 1554–1555**
- software requirements for Microsoft Office, 1341–1342**
- Solstice form style, 594–595, 598, 600**
- Sort & Filter group on Home tab, 554**
- Sort Ascending button, 385**
- Sort By options (Navigation Pane), 76–77**
- Sort Descending button, 385**
- sorting**
 - adding to report in Layout view, 793–795
 - applying multiple sorts in reverse order, 403
 - changing row sequence by cutting or, 396
 - columns in project queries, 1503–1504
 - data in Datasheet view, 401–405
 - defining criteria
 - in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 769, 816–817
 - for queries, 380
 - in Report Wizard, 780
 - form field data, 551, 554
 - multiple fields, 403–405
 - number values of Lookup properties, 381
 - objects
 - automatically in Navigation Pane, 76–77
 - manually in Navigation Pane, 77–78
 - rows in recordsets, 378–380, 421
- Soundex**
 - checking for potential duplicates with, 549
 - generating procedure for, 1073
- Source Connect Str property, 462**
- source data. *See* data sources**
- Source Database property, 462**
- spaces**
 - as character in format string, 653, 655
 - eliminating when concatenating Null values, 364, 420
 - omitting in field names, 159, 216
 - XML field names with, 1263
- Special Effect button, 583, 645–646**
- special effects for highlighting form, 645–646**
- spelling checks**
 - checking typing errors as possible duplicate lookup values, 238
 - settings for, 92
- split forms, 522, 590–591**
- split tables, 237**
- splitting databases, 1320**
- spreadsheets, 273–282**
 - database systems vs., 13
 - designing databases from, 17
 - exporting Access data to, A80
 - fixing errors in imported data from, 280–282
 - importing, 275–279
 - linking to Access databases, 300–301
 - moving data to temporary table first, 275

- preparing for import to Access, 274–275
- reasons to convert to Access from, 15–17
- selecting fields to index and primary key, 278–279
- SQL (Structured Query Language). *See also* SQL Server 2005; Transact-SQL
 - about, 10
 - action queries
 - about, A33, A71
 - DELETE statement, A72–A73
 - INSERT statement, A73–A75
 - SELECT...INTO statement, A75–A76
 - basic clauses in, 464
 - brackets or parentheses added by Access, A34
 - commands used in data definition queries, 463
 - learning to write in SQL pane, 1498
 - linking tables to Access databases, 301–302
 - name separators in, 373
 - no modifications by ACE to, A61
 - ODBC standards for, 253–254
 - queries converted into, 417
 - query designer's use of, 463
 - SELECT queries, A34–A71
 - aggregate functions in, A35
 - BETWEEN predicate, A35
 - Column-Name clause, A35–A37
 - comparison predicate, A37–A38
 - DISTINCTROW clauses in, A34, A58–A59, A65
 - EXISTS predicate, A38–A39
 - Expression clause, A39–A41
 - FROM clause, A41–A44
 - GROUP BY clause, 464, 1506, A44, A65–A66
 - HAVING clause, A45
 - IN clause, A34, A46–A47
 - IN predicate, A47–A48
 - LIKE predicate, A48–A49
 - NULL predicate, A50
 - ORDER BY clause, 1510, 1511, A50–A52, A62, A63, A69
 - PARAMETERS declaration, A52–A54
 - quantified predicate, A54–A55
 - Search-Condition clause, A55–A57
 - SELECT statement, A57–A63
 - Subquery clause, A64–A67
 - syntax variants for, A34
 - TRANSFORM statement, A67–A68
 - UNION query operator, A68–A70
 - stored procedures, 1519–1524, 1526–1541
 - about, 1493, 1519
 - defined, 136
 - displaying in text editors, 1525
 - filtering, 1493
 - naming parameters for, 1517
 - using append and append values queries, 1519
 - TOP *n* PERCENT clause, 1510, 1511
 - underlying Access database commands, A33
- SQL action queries
 - about, A33, A71
 - DELETE statement, A72–A73
 - INSERT statement (append query), A73–A75
 - SELECT...INTO statement (make-table query), A75–A76
 - UPDATE statement, A77–A78
- SQL designer, 1530
- SQL pane (query designer), 1498
- SQL SELECT queries, A34–A71
 - about, A33
 - aggregate functions in, A35
 - BETWEEN predicate, A35
 - Column-Name clause, A35–A37
 - comparison predicate, A37–A38
 - EXISTS predicate, A38–A39
 - Expression clause, A39–A41
 - FROM clause, A41–A44
 - GROUP BY clause
 - overview of, A44–A45
 - selecting Group By options in query designer, 1506
 - uses of, 464, A65–A66
 - HAVING clause, A45
 - IN clause, A34, A46–A47
 - IN predicate, A47–A48
 - LIKE predicate, A48–A49
 - NULL predicate, A50
 - ORDER BY clause
 - overview, A50–A52
 - specifying calculated column alias name with, A62
 - TOP *n* PERCENT clause and, 1510, 1511
 - using column names of clause in UNION queries, A52, A63, A69
 - order of major clauses in, A33
 - PARAMETERS declaration, A52–A54
 - quantified predicate, A54–A55
 - Search-Condition clause, A55–A57
 - SELECT statement, A57–A63
 - Subquery clause, A64–A67
 - syntax variants for, A34
 - TRANSFORM statement, A67–A68
 - UNION query operator, A68–A70
 - WHERE clause, A70–A71
- SQL Server 7.0 column properties not visible, 1470
- SQL Server 2005. *See also* Microsoft SQL Server
 - Installation Wizard; SQL Server 2005 Express Edition
 - access to Create authority in, 113
 - adding project indexes, 1471–1475
 - checking Allow Nulls property first, 1482

SQL Server 2005, *continued*

- column data types, 1461–1464
 - creating
 - data source to, 256–258
 - user-defined data types, 1465
 - databases
 - building new, 1448–1451
 - connecting to existing, 1452–1457
 - errors creating, 1452, 1457
 - editing Access database tables in, 134–135
 - importing data from, 266–270
 - linking tables to Access databases, 301–302
 - names
 - databases vs. project files, 1450
 - embedded spaces in, 159, 216
 - ODBC Driver Manager and, 254
 - queries supported in, 1525
 - Rules for Identifiers, 1460
 - running Access databases in, 137, 138
 - saving project queries before running, 1510
 - selecting data types in, 1459
 - starting Configuration Manager, 266–267
 - storing attachment fields as OLE Object data types, 533
 - table column properties, 1467–1470
 - Transact-SQL, 1525
 - upsizing Multi-Value Lookup Fields unavailable for, 248
 - version compatibility with projects, 1448
- SQL Server 2005 Express Edition. *See also* Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard**
- authenticating with Windows Vista, 258
 - Create Database permissions, 1452
 - disk space required for, 1341
 - downloading, 133, 1350, 1494
 - installing, 1349–1358, 1494
 - licensing agreements for, 1350
 - Service Pack 2 for, 258
- SQL Server Books Online, 1460, 1533**
- SQL Server Configuration Manager, 266–267, 1357–1358**
- SQL statements**
- declaring, assigning values to, and testing variables, 1531–1532
 - defining block with BEGIN/END, 1531, 1532
 - using in text stored procedures, 1526
- SQL view, 463–468**
- SQL-to-Access data type conversions, 270**
- sql_variant data type, 1465**
- Stacked button, 635–636**
- stacked control layouts**
- converting, 798–800, 801
 - defined, 626, 797
 - removing, 632–635, 800
 - selecting controls into, 635–638

standard modules

- defined, 943
 - Private statement in, 972–973
 - Public statement in, 973–974
- starting and running applications, 1310–1316**
- intercepting Ctrl+F4 with AutoKeys macro, 1315–1316
 - loading USysRibbons table at startup, 1267–1268
 - setting database startup properties, 1310–1312
 - AutoExec macro for starting applications, 1310, 1312
 - hiding Navigation Pane on application startup, 1311
 - starting and stopping application, 1312–1315
 - startup from application shortcuts, 1331–1334
 - verifying and correcting linked table connections, 1323–1328

states

- abbreviations as selection criteria, 356
 - searching for with Filter By Form, 410–411
- static HTML documents, 1140–1158**
- customizing appearance of Datasheet view for, 1143–1148
 - designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151
 - exporting database as HTML file, 1140–1143

Static statement, 975–976**static Web pages**

- understanding, 1137–1139
- viewing, 1139–1140

status bar, 25, 1311**StDev function, 437****Stop All Macros button, 913****Stop Refresh button, 1548, 1568****Stop statement, 1024****StopAllMacros action, 932, 933****stored parameters, 1561–1565****stored procedures, 1519–1524**

- about SQL, 1493, 1519
- choosing combo box values resolved with, 1564, 1575–1576

defined, 136**defining properties for columns, 1523–1524****displaying in text editors, 1525****filtering, 1493****inserting parameters in append values queries, 1520–1522****naming parameters for, 1517****server filters unavailable for, 1558****text, 1526–1541****about, 1526–1527****adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535****comment blocks in, 1528****grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541****starting new, 1527–1529**

- user-defined, 1533
- using append and append values queries, 1519
- Stored Procedures tab (Properties window), 1523–1524**
- Stretch Across Top anchoring option, 624, 625**
- string constants, 362**
- string functions, A89–A90**
- strings**
 - comparing
 - case insensitivity of, 170
 - wildcard characters for, A49
 - concatenating
 - with & character, 362
 - text, 841–842
 - string constants, enclosing text in double or single quotation marks for, 362
 - string functions, A89–A90
 - zero-length, 166
- Structured Query Language. *See* SQL; SQL Server 2005**
- style of Form Wizard forms, 594–596**
- style sheets. *See* presentation (layout) document (.xsl)**
- Sub statement, 947, 1007–1009**
- Subdatasheet menu, 388**
- subdatasheet properties**
 - about, 178
 - performance with large tables, 179
 - Subdatasheet Expanded property, 180, 460
 - Subdatasheet Height property, 180, 460
- subdatasheets, 387–390**
 - defining
 - for complex queries, 458–462
 - subform for, 710–713
 - expanding, 387–390, 461
 - opening and filtering, 407
 - properties
 - about, 178
 - performance with large tables, 179
 - Subdatasheet Expanded property, 180, 460
 - Subdatasheet Height property, 180, 460
- subfolders as trusted location, 37–38**
- subforms, 522–523**
 - automatic linking to record source, 706
 - defined, 560
 - embedded, 692–713
 - creating, 703–706
 - creating main form, 707–710
 - defining subdatasheet subform, 710–713
 - designating main form source, 706–707
 - designing innermost first, 696–701
 - displaying complex information with, 1577
 - editing controls in inner forms, 709
 - setting up first-level subform, 701–702
 - specifying query data source for, 693–696
 - uses for, 692–693
 - embedding linked PivotChart in, 730, 733–734
 - illustrated, 561
 - linking
 - to form with filter, 1098–1099
 - records between forms and, 548
 - polishing design of, 698–700
 - rules for referencing, 920–921
 - situations impractical for using, 921
 - sizing controls in Form view, 704
 - subreports vs., 851
 - triggering data task from related, 1105–1109
 - using in Datasheet view, 701
 - viewing in Continuous Forms view, 700–701
- submenus**
 - Bitmap Image Object, 534
 - view by, 76
 - viewing categories of, 72
- subqueries**
 - correlated, A39, A66, A67
 - knowledge of SQL needed to define, A33
 - providing search criteria from underlying record source, 1093
 - testing existence of row in, A38, A39
- Subquery clause, A64–A67**
- subreports, 851–859**
 - building query for, 855
 - designing, 855–857
 - embedding, 741–744, 857–859
 - repeating report headers on, 851–854
 - rules for referencing, 920–921
- subroutines**
 - about, 1005
 - Call statement to transfer control to, 1017
 - declaring, 1007–1009
 - defining as method, 1005
- Subtotal button, 475**
- Sum control, 787, 788**
- Sum function**
 - about, 437
 - returning Null then converted to zero, 446–447
- summary lists, 1094–1095**
- Summary Options dialog box, 781**
- sunken effect for text box controls, 596–597, 610**
- Surface Area Configuration Tool, 1356, 1357**
- switchboard forms, 1305–1310**
 - checking for duplicate keyboard shortcuts, 1305–1306
 - command buttons on sample, 535–536, 537
 - designing, 1306–1310
 - function of, 560
- Switchboard Manager, 1306–1310**
 - building additional switchboard pages, 1307–1308
 - illustrated, 1308
 - starting, 1307

SwitchboardSample form, 1307**synchronizing**

- between Access and Visual Basic, 950
- changes in SharePoint Services after working offline, 1230–1233
- resolving changes, 1231
- related forms with macro, 924–928
- two forms with class event, 1101–1104

syntax

- append values queries, 1519–1520
- assigning object variable with Set statement, 991–993
- BETWEEN predicate, A35
- Call statement, 1017
- calling functions, 1542
- class modules
 - Property Get procedure, 1010
 - Property Let procedure, 1012
 - Property Set procedure, 1014
- Column-Name clause, A35
- comparison predicate, A37
- declaring variables and constants, 965–978
 - Const statement, 965
 - Dim statement, 966–969
 - Enum statement, 969–970
 - Event statement, 971–972
 - Private statement, 972–973
 - Public statement, 973–974
 - ReDim statement, 974–975
 - Static statement, 976
 - Type statement, 977–978
- DELETE statement, A72
- Do...Loop statement, 1018
- DoCmd object, 1026
- domain functions, 1057
- executing Access commands, 1027–1028
- EXISTS predicate, A38
- Expression clause, A39
- For...Next statement, 1019
- For Each...Next statement, 1019
- FROM clause, A41–A42
- Function statement, 1006–1007
- GoTo statement, 1020–1021
- GROUP BY clause, A44
- HAVING clause, A45
- If...Then...Else statement, 1021
- ImportXML command, 1256
- IN clause, A46–A47
- IN predicate, A47
- input mask, 171
- INSERT statement, A73
- LIKE predicate, A48
- LoadCustomUI method, 1285

NULL predicate, A50

On Error statement, 1029

Open method of ADO recordset, 1001

OpenRecordset method, 994

ORDER BY clause, A50

PARAMETERS declaration, A52

quantified predicate, A54

RaiseEvent statement, 1022

Search-Condition clause, A55

SELECT...INTO statement, A75–A76

Select Case statement, 1023

SELECT statement, A57–A58

Stop statement, 1024

Sub statement, 1007–1009

Subquery clause, A64

temporary variables, 909

text table-valued function, 1544

transaction batching, 1535

TRANSFORM statement, A67

UNION query operator, A68

UPDATE statement, A77

variants for SELECT statement and action queries, A34

WHERE clause, A70

While...Wend statement, 1025

With...End statement, 1025

System Button Face property, 647

system colors, 647

System Configuration Check page (Microsoft SQL Server
Installation Wizard), 1351–1352

system functions, A90–A91

system objects

- displaying in Navigation Pane, 1267

- recommended settings for, 1269

system tables

- displaying in Navigation Pane, 1267

- protecting, 1267, 1269

T

tab controls, 719–723

- about, 530

- controlling tabbing on multiple-page form, 1080–1082

- property settings for, 723

- setting Page Index property, 721

- working with, 720–722

Tab Index property, 663

Tab key, 393

tab order for form controls, 662–663

Table Analyzer Wizard, 234–240

- choosing recommendations by, 236

- creating new query for modified table, 238–239

- eliminating duplicate lookup values, 238

- final page of, 239

- opening pages of, 235
- selecting table to analyze, 235–236
- table definitions**
 - limitations on changes to, 205
 - updating with AutoCorrect smart tag, 233
- Table Design button**, 155, 1458
- table templates**, 151–155, 1260–1265
 - about, 1260–1261
 - adding field to, 1261–1264
 - creating and modifying, 153
 - maximum length of text fields in, 1263
 - modifying field in, 1264–1265
 - types of, 152–153
- Table Templates command**, 153–154
- Table window**, 107–109
- Table Wizard**, 153
- TableDefs collection**, 984
- tables**. *See also* designing; tables; fields; relationships, between tables
 - about, 99
 - accessing shortcut menu commands for, 106–107
 - appending
 - data from other, 502–507
 - rows with INSERT statement, A73–A75
 - applying filters to data, 178
 - avoiding outer joins between two, 185
 - basing forms on queries of multiple, 686–691
 - before modifying design of, 204–205
 - creating
 - quick create form from, 590–593
 - quick datasheets for, 592–593
 - snapshot, A31
 - with template, 151–155
 - update queries with multiple, 493–495
 - Datasheet view for, 109–110
 - deleting, 209–210
 - Design view for, 107–108
 - designating as embedded subform source, 706–707
 - designing, 142
 - concept for, A17
 - from subject worksheets, A16
 - displaying list of, 105–106
 - editing in SQL Server, 134–135
 - eliminating duplicate lookup values, 238
 - entering data in first, 149–151
 - exporting
 - data to SharePoint Services from, 1182–1186
 - XML, 1246–1250
 - extra rows in, 111
 - fields
 - defining, 156–157
 - deleting, 225
 - displaying all in field list, 563–564
 - editing on one side of join, 419
 - inserting in, 220–222
 - moving in, 217–220
 - omitting embedded spaces in names, 159, 216
 - selecting all, 352, 353
 - selecting from multiple, 778
 - fully qualifying names of fields and, 372
 - function of, 4
 - generating with make-table queries, 485, 495–502
 - importing
 - source data into SharePoint database, 1187–1188
 - from XML file, 1255–1256
 - input masks for data, 170–174
 - integrity checks in design of, 413
 - limitations of, 201
 - linked
 - indicator for SharePoint Services, 1193
 - modifying, 302–303
 - with other Access database table, 295–298
 - unlinking, 303
 - using, 1320–1328
 - looking up values with combo box, 602–604
 - make-table queries, A75–A76
 - making backup copies of, 206–207
 - matching relationships unnecessary for joined, 416
 - modifying imported, 292
 - MSys system, 1267
 - normalizing data for joined, 414
 - opening in Design view, 155–156, 188
 - primary keys for, 174–175
 - printing definitions of, 199–200
 - project
 - about, 133–135
 - adding column definitions, 1475–1477
 - adding with queries, 1495–1496
 - creating in Design view, 1457–1459
 - defining relationships with database diagrams, 1485–1488
 - illustrating relationships and specifying joins for, 1500–1503
 - indexes in, 1471–1475
 - overview, 1447
 - setting design options, 1488–1490
 - relations stored in, 5
 - relationships
 - between, 181–188
 - to other Access objects, 100–101
 - to queries and forms, 560
 - relinking when going back online, 1232–1233
 - renaming, 211–212

tables, *continued*

- reversing changes to design, 234
- saving, 151
- searching for and filtering data in, 405–412
- selecting for inner joins, 415
- separating names of SQL fields and, 373
- setting datasheet format for in Datasheet view, 1145
- setting design options for, 191–195
- similarity of SharePoint lists and Access, 1169
- single-field indexes for, 188–189
- storing calculated value in, 1114
- subdatasheet property settings for, 178, 179, 180
- switching views with buttons or tabs, 109
- testing
 - for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
 - validation rules for, 382–384
- using Find Unmatched Query Wizard with, 433
- USysRibbons, 1266–1269
- validation rules for, 175–178
- viewing relationships defined for, 187
- working with Visual FoxPro, 268

Tables And Related Views category (Navigation Pane), 49–52

- adding groups to, 57
- filtering objects in, 52–53
- groups included in, 57
- maximizing search for objects from, 82
- switching to, 49–50
- unable to reorder display, 61
- Unrelated Objects category in, 51–52

Tables object type, 48**table-valued functions, 1493****tabs. *See also* contextual tabs; tab controls**

- Create, 24, 42–43
- Database Tools, 24, 44–45
- displaying or hiding document, 85–86
- External Data, 24, 43–44
 - about, 24, 43–44
 - illustrated, 43, 261
 - import and export commands on, 261, 1183
 - SharePoint List button on, 1183, 1184
- Home, 24, 42
- main Ribbon, 41, 104
- Ribbon contextual, 41

Tabular button, 800–801**tabular control layouts**

- converting, 798–800, 801
- defined, 626, 797
- removing, 632–635, 800

tag members, 1131–1134**tags**

- browser rendering of, 1131

common HTML coding, 1129–1131

creating members for, 1131–1134

defined, 1128

members of commonly used, 1133

XML, 1236, 1238, 1240, 1243

tasks

- analyzing application's, A7–A10
- automating complex, 1105–1114
 - calculating stored value, 1114
 - linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
 - triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
- charting flow of, A4
- completing design worksheet for, A9, A10, A12
- data as output of, A11
- identifying application, A4
- organizing, A11–A13
- relationships among database, A13
- selecting data to perform, A11

Tasks template, 152**TCP (Transmission Control Protocol), 1137****TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol), 1137****templates**

- creating
 - custom default, 195–199
 - database with, 142–147
 - for reports outputting to HTML, 1151–1152
 - SharePoint list from Access using existing, 1199–1203
- defining for form, 682–683
- downloading online, 145–147
- exporting report with, 1152–1154
- HTML
 - customizing data output with, 1147
 - designing and using, 1148–1151
- modifying XML view files of, 153
- preserving sunken text box control effect, 610
- renaming default as Normal, 682
- saving in Windows Vista, 197
- selecting database, 143–145
- table, 151–155, 1260–1265
 - about, 1260–1261
 - adding field to, 1261–1264
 - creating and modifying, 153
 - modifying field in, 1264–1265
 - types of, 152–153
- Table Wizard replaced with table, 153
- tokens for HTML, 1149
- used for IssuesSample.accdb database, 54

temporary variables

- about, 907
- compatibility of .mdb databases with, 910
- creating, 908–909

- macro actions using, A117
- passing information between linked forms with, 934–935
- referencing in macros, 991
- removing, 991
- removing and deleting, 909–910
- sample macro using, 933–934
- syntax for, 909
- TempVars collection**, 991, A117
- testing**
 - application design, A6
 - code for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
 - conditions using macro actions, A107–A108
 - custom Ribbon, 1270, 1272–1273
 - data updates with select queries, 486
 - database in runtime mode, 1329
 - in-line functions, 1516–1517
 - macros, 894–895
 - Null values with macro, 927
 - rows
 - affected by delete queries, 507–510
 - existence in subquery, A38, A39
 - table validation rules, 382–384
 - text stored procedure variables, 1531, 1532
- text**
 - changing maximum length of, 230–231
 - defining Lookup properties for, 353
 - embedding with double quotation marks, 653
 - encoding options for exported, 1248, 1249
 - formatting properties for, 655–656
 - report grouping options for, 818
- text box controls**
 - activating Date Picker for, 727
 - placing on form design grid, 578–579
 - resizing in Layout view, 797–798
 - sunken effect for, 596–597
- text boxes**
 - changing to combo box manually, 602
 - conditional formatting of, 716
 - duplicate names for report fields and, 836
 - formatting properties for data display, 651–661
 - overlying to display filtered data, 1096
 - setting properties for input form, 584–585
 - sizing controls for reports, 772–773
 - width unadjusted with Size To Fit command, 614
- Text data type**
 - about, 158–159
 - converting, 226
 - formatting characters for, 655–656
- text editor**, 1524–1545
 - backing up text queries, 1526
 - building text scalar function, 1541–1543
 - building text stored procedure, 1526–1541
 - about, 1526–1527
 - adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535
 - grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541
 - re-creating stored procedure from query designer, 1529–1530
 - starting new procedure, 1527–1529
 - building text table-valued function, 1543–1545
- text expressions**, 362–364
- text fields**
 - maximum length in table templates, 1263
 - SharePoint's conversion of line characters in, 1218
 - showing Null value in, 657
- text files**, 282–291
 - automating import specification of fixed-width, 291
 - data setup for fixed-width, 284–285
 - delimited or fixed-width, 282
 - exporting data to, A81
 - fixing errors in imported, 290
 - importing, 285–290
 - linking to Access databases, 300–301
 - preparing to import, 282
 - setting up delimited data, 283–284
- text scalar functions**, 1541–1543
- text stored procedures**, 1526–1541
 - about, 1526–1527
 - adding control-of-flow statements, 1531–1535
 - comment blocks in, 1528
 - declaring variables, 1531–1532
 - grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541
 - starting new, 1527–1529
 - testing variables in, 1531, 1532
- text strings**, concatenating, 841–842
- text table-valued function**, 1543–1545
- themes applied on forms**, 559, 596, 692
- thickness, control line**, 583–584
- thousands separator character (comma)**, 653
- 3-D object color**, 565
- time**. *See also* Date/Time data type
 - cautions building criteria on date and, 357
 - checking for overlapping, 1078–1080
 - filtering records for Append query by, 503–504
 - functions for date and, 375–376
 - prevented entry of values with input mask, 361
 - using in selection criteria, 356–357
- timer detection**, 882
- titles**
 - adding Report Wizard report, 782–783
 - entering in Group, Sort, And Total pane, 766–767
 - PivotChart, 480–481
- To Grid button**, 618

toggle buttons

- about, 526–527
- check boxes and option buttons vs., 606
- setting field's status with, 605–607

Toggle Filter button, 402

tokens

- defined, 1149
- HTML template, 1149

toolbars. *See* Quick Access Toolbar

TOP clause, 1511

TOP keyword, A62

TOP *n* PERCENT clause, 1510, 1511, A65

Top Values property, 453–454

totals. *See also* totals queries

- calculating on expressions, 838
- counting total events with controls, 804–807
- creating report's grand, 839–840
- filtering
 - groups of totals, 441–442
 - records before grouping, 440–441
- options in Group, Sort, And Total pane for, 766
- partitioning sales, 447–449
- running, 845–848

Totals button, 435

Totals Fields drop zone, 474

totals queries, 435–449

- defining aggregate functions in, 435–436, 437
- filtering
 - before grouping records with, 440–441
 - groups of totals after calculating, 441–442
- partitioning data in, 447
- sorting sequence of, 439
- unable to change data in, 468
- uses for, 435

tracking AutoCorrect information for names, 208

transactions, defined, 12

Transact-SQL

- about, 1491
- creating text queries with, 1525
- finding list of reserved words for, 1460
- grouping multiple statements with transactions, 1535–1541

TRANSFORM clauses, A34

TRANSFORM statement, A67–A68

Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), 1137

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP), 1137, 1138

trapping

- errors
 - event properties for, 882
 - in macros, 910–915
 - in Visual Basic, 1028–1030
- keyboard and mouse events, 876–878

troubleshooting

- Access won't use ODBC for all file types, 268
- action queries, 512–514
- can't see column properties or create lookups in SQL Server 7.0, 1470
- can't set defined default value in date/time field, 1063
- cautions setting VB breakpoints, 957
- control validation rules, 670
- ensuring correct table used in query designer, 415
- errors authenticating SQL Server 2005 Express Edition with Windows Vista, 258
- errors creating SQL Server database, 1452, 1457
- extra table rows in Datasheet view, 111
- incomplete macro actions, 892
- link to User Information List deleted, 1194
- Maximize/Minimize buttons not in windows, 109
- missing records in imported SharePoint list, 1191
- missing Web page graphic or background, 1150
- project forms and reports unsupported in Layout view, 1552
- unable to change published database, 1224
- undoing deleted table relationships, 211

TrueType (TT) fonts, 649

truncated data warning message, 230

Trust Center, 34–35

- enabling
 - content by defining trusted locations, 39–40
 - untrusted database, 35–36
- illustrated, 37, 96
- opening, 36, 96
- selecting privacy options, 38–39

trusted actions, A101

trusted connection for SQL Server databases, 1450–1451

trusted locations

- defining, 39–40
- designating, 37–38
- downloading SharePoint databases to, 1225
- illustrated, 40
- placing sample files in, 23, 103

trusted macros, 916

trusted publishers, 37

Trustworthy Computing, 34

T-SQL. *See* Transact-SQL

TT (TrueType) fonts, 649

turning on/off. *See* disabling; enabling

twips, 1120

Two Pages button, 124, 125

Type statement, 977–978

U

UI. *See* user interface (UI)

Unassigned Objects group

- display rules for, 61–63

- hiding in Navigation Pane, 67, 68, 74
- unbound, 566
- UNC (Universal Naming Convention) path name, 1323
- underscore (_)
 - default placeholder character, 171
 - using names in brackets with embedded, 989
 - wildcard character for project file, A49
- undocking
 - Field List window, 122
 - Visual Basic Editor windows, 946
- undoing
 - deleted relationships between tables, 211
 - deletions, 210
 - multiple design changes, 234
 - rows replaced in error, 224
- Unicode UTF-8 vs. UTF-16, 1148
- union queries, 463–468
 - building in SQL view, 463–468
 - illustrated, 468
 - updates disallowed for, 469
 - using column names in ORDER BY clause of, A52, A63, A69
 - viewing in Datasheet view, 465
- UNION query operator, A68–A70
- unique identifiers, A20–A21
- unique indexes
 - creating, 1473
 - ignoring duplicate key for, 1474
- Unique Records property, 454–458
- Unique Values property, 454–458, 469
- units of measure for form grid, 566
- Universal Naming Convention (UNC) path name, 1323
- unlinking linked tables, 303
- unmatched (<>) values in queries, 1503, A42
- unmatched records, 426–430, 432–434
- Unrelated Objects category, 51–52
- Unset Database Password dialog box, 1335
- untrusted locations, 1225
- untrusted macros. *See* not trusted macros
- updatable recordsets, 1554–1555
- update queries, 486–495
 - backing up data before using, 489
 - command on Design contextual tab for, 488
 - confirmation dialog boxes with, 489, 491
 - converting select query to, 488
 - defined, 485
 - defining generic parameters for, 495
 - expressions in, 489
 - icon for, 490
 - illustrated, 488
 - multiple tables or queries creating, 493–495
 - running, 489–491
 - updating multiple fields, 491–493
 - using select query to test data updates, 486–487
- UPDATE statement, A77–A78
- Update Status Bar Text Everywhere ContactID Is Used command, 233
- updates for Microsoft Office system, 97
- updating
 - custom Ribbon elements, 1297–1299
 - data, A11
 - image path for photograph, 1070–1071
 - properties with AutoCorrect smart tag, 233
 - records
 - including primary key information when, 310
 - via e-mail collection, 308–309, 329–330
 - rows in ADO recordset, 1004
 - view conditions limiting, 1508
- Upgrade tab (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1348, 1349
- upgrading previous Microsoft Office version, 1347–1349
- uppercase characters (>), 655
- upsizing applications to projects, 533
- Use Access Special Keys check box (Access Options dialog box), 957
- Use Control Wizards button, 602
- Use Trusted Connection check box (Microsoft SQL Server Database Wizard), 1450–1451
- Use Windows-Themed Controls On Forms option, 559, 596, 692
- User Account Control, 197
- User Information List, 1194
- User Information tab (Microsoft Office dialog box), 1345–1346, 1348
- user interface (UI), 19–97. *See also* Detail section; Navigation Pane; Ribbon
 - contextual tabs
 - adding built-in groups to, 1276–1279
 - Arrange, 564, 618
 - creating for custom Ribbon, 1274–1275
 - Design, 121–122, 184, 488, 509, 564
 - disabling unused, 1283–1284
 - found on Form Design Tools tab, 567
 - hidden when Navigation Pane collapsed, 739
 - Print Preview, 739
 - report, 761
 - Report Design Tools, 121–122, 761
 - Ribbon, 41, 104
 - setting focus to, 1301–1302
 - controlling display with macro actions, A113–A114
 - designing application prototype for, A5
 - dimmed objects in, 73–74
 - form navigation buttons and command icons, 540
 - Getting Started screen, 21–22, 102
 - modifying global settings, 87–97

user interface, *continued*

- Navigation Pane, 24, 46
 - function of, 45–47
 - Object Type category of, 57, 82, 105–106, 114, 115
 - searching for database objects from, 78–82
 - Tables And Related Views category of, 49–52
 - width of, 47, 103
 - opening existing databases, 22–25
 - opening first time, 19–20
 - Quick Access Toolbar, 27–33
 - adding command from Ribbon to, 34
 - adding macros to, 30–31
 - adding separators between commands, 33
 - Customize category settings for, 28–29, 94
 - Database Tools tab, 24, 44–45
 - default and custom commands on, 27–30
 - illustrated, 28
 - removing items from, 28–29, 33, 34
 - restoring default settings for, 33
 - revising order of commands and macros on, 32
 - undo feature for, 210
 - Ribbon
 - adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
 - adding command to Quick Access Toolbar from, 34
 - building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
 - collapsing, 45
 - customizing, 1266–1279, 1283–1302
 - getting accustomed to, 21
 - illustrated, 24, 41
 - main tabs, 41
 - not used in Visual Basic Editor, 945
 - quick create commands on, 590
 - Search box, 553–554
 - single- vs. multiple-document, 83–86
 - status bar, 25
 - Trust Center, 34–35
 - user interface functions, A90–A91
 - using Microsoft Office Button, 24, 25–27
 - Visual Basic Editor, 945–950
 - Windows SharePoint Services, 1167–1168
 - adding columns to lists, 1175–1179
 - creating views, 1172–1175, 1191
 - editing lists, 1168–1172
 - Recycle Bin, 1179–1182, 1197
 - working with queries in Datasheet view, 384–386
- user-defined data types, 1465**
- user-defined stored procedures, 1533**
- user-level security for .accdb files, 12**
- users**
- application design feedback from, A6
 - controlling form filtering and modifications by, 673–674
 - forms requiring input from, 524–525

- making design changes on forms, 589
- preventing use of window controls by, 675
- restricting form views for, 670–671

USysRibbons table, 1266–1269

- creating, 1266
- displaying, 1266–1267
- loading
 - custom Ribbons from, 1284–1285
 - during startup, 1267–1268
 - Ribbons into Access data projects, 1286

V**validating data. *See also* validation rules**

- check constraints for SQL Server, 1478–1480
- with macros, 928–934
 - steps executed when, 929
 - types of invalid data, 928–929
 - using macro group, 929–934
 - using preset values, 935–938
- in Visual Basic, 1071–1080
 - checking for overlapping data, 1078–1080
 - checking for possible duplicate names, 1071–1073
 - maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080
 - testing for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075
 - verifying prerequisite before saving record, 1075–1077

Validation Rule property, 168, 670**validation rules**

- about, 7
- action query violations of, 512
- checking new field, 381–382
- comparison symbols in, 169
- control, 670
- defining table, 175–178
- sample table, 176
- specifying for fields, 165, 168–170
- testing new table, 382–384
- unsupported in SharePoint Services, 1219
- using Between, In, and Like comparison operators, 360–361

Validation Text box (Properties dialog box), 1472, 1474–1475**Validation Text property, 670****values**

- macro actions setting, A109
- viewing list of valid property, 575

Var function, 437**variables**

- assigning object, 991–993
- CurrentDb function to set database, 989
- declaring for text stored procedures, 1531–1532

- examining in Watch window for errors, 956–959
- global, 961
- temporary, 907–910
 - about, 907
 - compatibility of .mdb databases with, 910
 - creating, 908–909
 - macro example using, 933–934
 - passing information between linked forms with, 934–935
 - removing and deleting, 909–910
 - syntax for, 909
- Visual Basic, 961–978
 - adding data-type prefix to name, 966
 - data types supported, 961–963
 - defining data type with data-typing characters, 962
 - defining scope of, 963–964
 - implicit/explicit data type definitions, 962–963
- VBE. *See* Visual Basic Editor (VBE)
- VBScript, 1128, 1158
- versions
 - Access compatibility with earlier, 1358–1359
 - checking database, 1327
 - keeping installations of multiple Access, 1348–1349
 - required SQL Server software for projects, 1448
 - SQL modifications by earlier Access, A61
 - upgrading previous Microsoft Office, 1347–1349
- vertical I-bar, 802–803
- vertically
 - moving one or more controls, 621
 - selecting all controls, 588, 600
- View By submenu (Navigation Pane), 76
- View tab (Properties window), 1512–1513
- viewing
 - complete list of macro actions, 892
 - data in forms, 539
 - filter icon in ScreenTip, 408
 - HTML behind Web page, 1128
 - hyperlinks, 397–398
 - list of valid property values, 575
 - module objects in database, 942–943
 - project table relationships in Diagram window, 1486
 - query data in various ways, 10–11
 - relationships defined for tables or queries, 187
 - reports in Print Preview, 736, 737–739
 - SQL Server table indexes, 1472
 - static Web pages, 1139–1140
 - trusted publishers, 37
- views. *See also* Datasheet view; Design view; Form view; Layout view
 - creating Windows SharePoint Services, 1172–1175, 1191
 - displaying properties for query, 1510–1513
 - formatting form properties to restrict user's, 670–671
 - options for overlapping or tabbed document, 109
 - project
 - creating in query designer, 1495
 - reason for using, 1507–1508
 - working with as query, 1493
 - working with, 1507–1513
 - project file, 135
 - sorting and selecting Navigation Pane, 76–77
- Views button, 110
- Visual Basic (VB), 941–1124. *See also* Visual Basic Editor (VBE)
 - assisting data entry, 1053–1071
 - filling in related data, 1053–1057
 - fixing e-mail hyperlink, 1061–1062
 - handling NotInList event, 1058–1061
 - providing graphical calendar, 1063–1068
 - working with linked photos, 1069–1071
 - automating complex tasks, 1105–1114
 - calculating stored value, 1114
 - linking to related task, 1098–1099, 1109–1114
 - triggering data task from related form, 1105–1109
 - automating data selection, 1082–1097
 - filtering one list with another, 1095–1097
 - multiple-selection list boxes, 1082–1086
 - providing custom query by form, 1086–1093
 - selecting from summary list, 1094–1095
 - automating reports, 1114–1124
 - drawing border on report, 1118–1121
 - dynamically filtering report on opening, 1121–1124
 - using up partial page of mailing labels, 1115–1118
 - automating XML import and export in, 1256–1260
 - class modules, 1009–1016
 - Property Get procedure, 1010–1012
 - Property Let procedure, 1012–1014
 - Property Set procedure, 1014–1016
 - understanding, 1009–1010
 - code disabled when downloaded to untrusted locations, 1225
 - coding routines in modules, 130
 - collections, objects, properties, and methods
 - assigning object variable, 991–993
 - object methods, 993–1005
 - object model hierarchies organizing, 978–987
 - referencing collections, objects, and properties, 987–989
 - referencing in variables created by macros, 991
 - setting database variable with CurrentDb function, 989
 - using exclamation points and periods in names, 989–990

Visual Basic, *continued*

- controlling flow of statements, 1016–1026
 - Call statement, 1017
 - Do...Loop statement, 1017–1018
 - For...Next statement, 1018–1019
 - For Each...Next statement, 1019–1020
 - GoTo statement, 1020–1021
 - If...Then...Else statement, 1021–1022
 - RaiseEvent statement, 1022–1023
 - Select Case statement, 1023–1024
 - Stop statement, 1024
 - While...Wend statement, 1025
 - With...End statement, 1025–1026
- controlling tabbing on multiple-page form, 1080–1082
- debugging, 951–960
 - call stack, 959–960
 - preventing, 1312, 1328
 - setting breakpoints, 951–952, 957
 - using Immediate window, 952–956
 - working with Watch window, 956–959, 960
- examples of complex code, 1030–1050
 - examining all error codes, 1044–1050
 - randomly loading data, 1030–1044
- executing Access commands, 1027–1028
- functions and subroutines, 1005–1000
 - about, 1005
 - Function statement, 1006–1007
 - list of functions on companion CD, 371
 - Sub statement, 1007–1009
- linking to data in other form or report, 1098–1094
 - linking forms with filter, 1098–1099
 - linking to report with filter, 1099–1101
 - synchronizing two forms with class event, 1101–1104
- macros
 - converting to VB, 938–940
 - equivalents for macro actions, 1028
 - executing macro actions, 1026–1027
 - using procedures instead of, 1052–1053
 - using with VB, 890, 1052
- modules, 942–944
 - form and report, 944
 - module objects, 942–943
- relationship between Access and, 942, 950
- resetting Page property value with, 833
- trapping errors in, 1028–1030
- validating complex data, 1071–1080
 - checking for duplicate names, 1071–1073
 - maintaining special unique value constraint, 1077–1080
- overlapping data checks, 1078–1080
- testing for related records when deleting record, 1074–1075

- verifying prerequisite before saving record, 1075–1077
- variables and constants, 961–978
 - data types supported, 961–963
 - declaring, 965–978
 - naming conventions for variables, 966
 - scope of, 963–964
 - writing HTML from, 1154–1158

Visual Basic 2005 Express Edition, 1261**Visual Basic Editor (VBE)**

- about, 942
- customizing in Options dialog box, 948
- illustrated, 945
- indenting VB coding, 948–949
- opening
 - with Build button in event property, 906
 - and displaying modules in, 131–132
- setting database options in, 198, 199
- user interface for, 945–950, 1161

Visual Basic Scripting Edition (VBScript), 1128, 1158**Visual FoxPro**

- importing data from, 266–270
- ODBC drivers required to import, 269
- specifying source for tables with IN clause, A46, A47
- working with tables in Access, 268

Visual FoxPro-to-Access data type conversions, 270**Visual Studio, 664, 1161****Visual Studio .NET, 1131, 1160–1161****W****W3C (World Wide Web Consortium), 1128****warning messages**

- alerts for reserved words or function names, 159
- data conversion errors, 232
- InfoPath form, 335–336
- macro actions displaying, A115
- possible data truncation, 230
- security, 24, 25
- when deleting field definitions, 225

waste in single table design, A17–A19**Watch window**

- deleting watched item after finishing, 960
- examining variables for errors in, 956–959

Web applications, 1127–1163

- creating in HTML, 1128–1135
- development tools required for, 1127–1128
- difficulties working with OLE objects, 1069
- dynamic Web pages, 1158–1161
 - delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160
 - processing live data with HTML forms, 1160
 - using ASP for fetching data on, 1158
- sharing data with SharePoint Services, 1161–1163

- static HTML documents
 - customizing appearance of, 1143–1148
 - designing and using HTML templates, 1148–1151
 - generating HTML page from Access report, 1151–1154
- static Web pages
 - understanding, 1137–1139
 - viewing, 1139–1140
- XML for, 1135–1137
- Web browsers.** *See also* Internet Explorer
 - allowing scripts to run on, 1245
 - configuring file to open after export in, 1185
 - connecting to Web servers using TCP/IP, 1137–1138
 - cross-browser issues, 1131
 - displaying HTML behind Web page, 1128
 - opening HTML files after export complete, 1147
 - viewing columns of custom SharePoint list in, 1205
 - Web protocols used by, 1138
- web packages (.htm),** 1237, 1243–1245
- Web pages.** *See also* Web sites
 - applying tags to complex HTML, 1133–1134
 - browsers' rendering of HTML tags, 1131
 - dynamic, 1158–1161
 - delivering dynamic query results, 1158–1160
 - processing live data with HTML forms, 1160
 - using ASP for fetching data on, 1158
 - generating from Access report, 1151–1154
 - HTML, editing, 1134–1135
 - missing graphic or background on, 1150
 - opening from hyperlink, 398–399
 - refreshing static, 1140
 - static
 - understanding, 1137–1139
 - viewing, 1139–1140
 - structure of HTML, 1128
 - using color names and codes on, A93
- Web Parts,** 1162, 1165–1166
- Web sites**
 - Microsoft Office Live, 1161–1162, 1166
 - Windows SharePoint Services
 - about sample, 1167–1168
 - gaining access to, 1166
 - illustrated, 1167
 - relinking list to new, 1197
- well-formed XML**
 - about, 1236–1237
 - building for custom Ribbon form, 1270–1271
- WHERE clause**
 - HAVING clause vs., A45
 - overview, A70–A71
 - uses of, 464
- While...Wend statement,** 1025
- width**
 - adjusting report field's, 802, 804
 - choosing form, 565
 - Navigation Pane's, 47, 103
- wildcards**
 - characters for LIKE predicate, A48–A49
 - searching data using, 406
 - used with LIKE comparison operator, 169
- windows.** *See also* Immediate window
 - changing font size for Query, 467
 - closing without Close button, 675
 - Filter By Form, 555
 - Form, 114–121
 - inserting new rows in Index, 190
 - Layout view for Report, 125–127
 - Macro, 890–893
 - Maximize/Minimize buttons for, 108, 109, 675
 - moving between parts of Design view, 222
 - PivotTable design, 474
 - pop-up forms, 523–524
 - preventing use of controls for, 675
 - previewing Report, 124–125
 - Relationships, 187–188
 - Report view for Report, 127–128
 - Table, 107–109
 - undocking Visual Basic Editor, 946
 - Visual Basic Editor, 945
 - Watch, 956–959, 960
- Windows Internet Explorer.** *See* Internet Explorer
- Windows SharePoint Services (version 3),** 1161–1163, 1165–1233
 - about, 1161–1162, 1165–1166
 - adding columns to lists, 1175–1179
 - creating SharePoint list from within Access, 1198–1207
 - adding record to table, 1200–1201
 - creating custom list, 1203–1207
 - using existing list template, 1199–1203
 - creating views, 1172–1175, 1191
 - DAPs vs., 14
 - editing data in lists, 1168–1172
 - exporting Access data to, 1182–1186
 - gaining access to sites using, 1166
 - illustrated, 1167
 - importing list to Access from, 1186–1191
 - indicator for linked tables, 1193
 - linking list to Access, 1191–1195
 - lists in, 216
 - Microsoft Office integration with, 1162–1163
 - migrating database to SharePoint site, 1207–1233
 - about, 1207–1208
 - opening database from SharePoint, 1223–1226
 - steps to move database, 1212–1219
 - synchronizing changes after working offline, 1230–1233
 - ways SharePoint handles migrated data, 1218–1219
 - working offline, 1226–1229

Windows SharePoint Services, *continued*

- publishing database to SharePoint site, 1208–1211
 - moving vs., 1207
 - publishing changes to migrated database, 1217
- Recycle Bin, 1179–1182, 1197
- referential integrity not enforced by, 1195
- republishing after changing database, 1207, 1219–1222
- sample database using, 1166
- sharing with, 13
- user interface for, 1167–1168
- using options for linked lists, 1196–1198
- viewing hidden columns in SharePoint lists, 1206, 1219
- Web Parts, 1162, 1165–1166

Windows SharePoint Services Web sites

- about sample, 1167–1168
- gaining access to, 1166
- illustrated, 1167
- relinking list to new, 1197

Windows Vista

- Clipboard in, 395
- disabling User Account Control and saving database in template folder, 197
- errors authenticating SQL Server 2005 Express Edition with, 258
- as event-driven operating system, 867–868
- MSDE unsupported in, 1494

With...End statement, 1025–1026**WITHOWNERACCESSOPTION clauses, A34, A60****Word mail merge documents, A81–A82****word processors**

- exporting data to mail merge document, A81–A82
- reasons to transfer data to Access from, 15–17

Work Offline button, 1227, 1228**Work Online button, 1230, 1231****workflow for SharePoint Services, 1197****working offline with SharePoint database, 1226–1229**

- illustrated, 1228
- pencil icon displayed next to changed records, 1229
- synchronizing changes in data after, 1230–1233

worksheets

- application design
 - subjects, A14, A15, A16
 - tasks, A9, A10, A12

World Wide Web. *See also* Web applications; Web browsers; Web pages

- about, 1127
- development tools required for, 1127–1128
- protocols and, 1138

World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), 1128, 1236**WriteHTML function, 1154–1156****X****XML (Extensible Markup Language), 1235–1279**

- about, 1135–1137, 1235, 1236
- automating import and export in Visual Basic, 1256–1260
- customizing Ribbon, 1266–1279
 - adding built-in groups to tabs, 1276–1279
 - building well-formed XML for, 1270–1271
 - code listing for, 1292–1294
 - creating form for testing Ribbon, 1270
 - creating tabs, 1274–1275
 - creating USysRibbons table, 1266–1269
 - creating VBA callbacks, 1296–1297
 - displaying errors, 1274
 - dynamically updating elements, 1297–1299
 - explanation of code listing, 1294–1296
 - hiding existing Ribbon elements, 1271–1272
 - hiding options on Microsoft Office Button, 1300–1301
 - loading images into custom controls, 1299–1300
 - setting focus to tab, 1301–1302
 - testing, 1272–1273
- exporting from Access, 1245–1254
 - as Active Server Page, 1249, 1250
 - forms and reports, 1250–1254
 - tables and queries, 1246–1250
- field names with spaces in, 1263
- file types for, 1237–1245
 - about, 1237
 - data documents (.xml), 1237, 1238–1239
 - presentation documents (.xsl), 1237, 1241–1243
 - presentation layout extension documents (.xss), 1237, 1243
 - schema documents (.xsd), 1237, 1239–1241
 - web packages (.htm), 1237, 1243–1245
- importing XML files into Access, 1254–1256
- loading custom Ribbon, 1284–1287
- modifying table templates, 1260–1265
- modifying template XML view files, 153
- using in Access, 1136–1137
- well-formed, 1236–1237
- .xml data documents
 - about, 1237
 - embedding schema and presentation information in, 1237
 - example of, 1238–1239
- XML File button, 1246
- XOR operator
 - expressing in query designer, A55
 - truth tables for, A56

- .xsd files
 - importing into Access, 1255
 - schema documents as, 1237, 1239–1241
- .xsl files
 - about, 1237, 1241–1243
 - Report ML version of, 1250, 1252
- .xsx file type, 1237, 1243

Y

- Yes/No data type
 - about, 158, 160
 - converting, 229
 - Format property settings for, 660

Z

- zero-length strings, 166
- Zip fields, 275
- Zoom button, 737, 738, 750
- Zoom window
 - entering expressions in, 362–363
 - examining macros in, 900